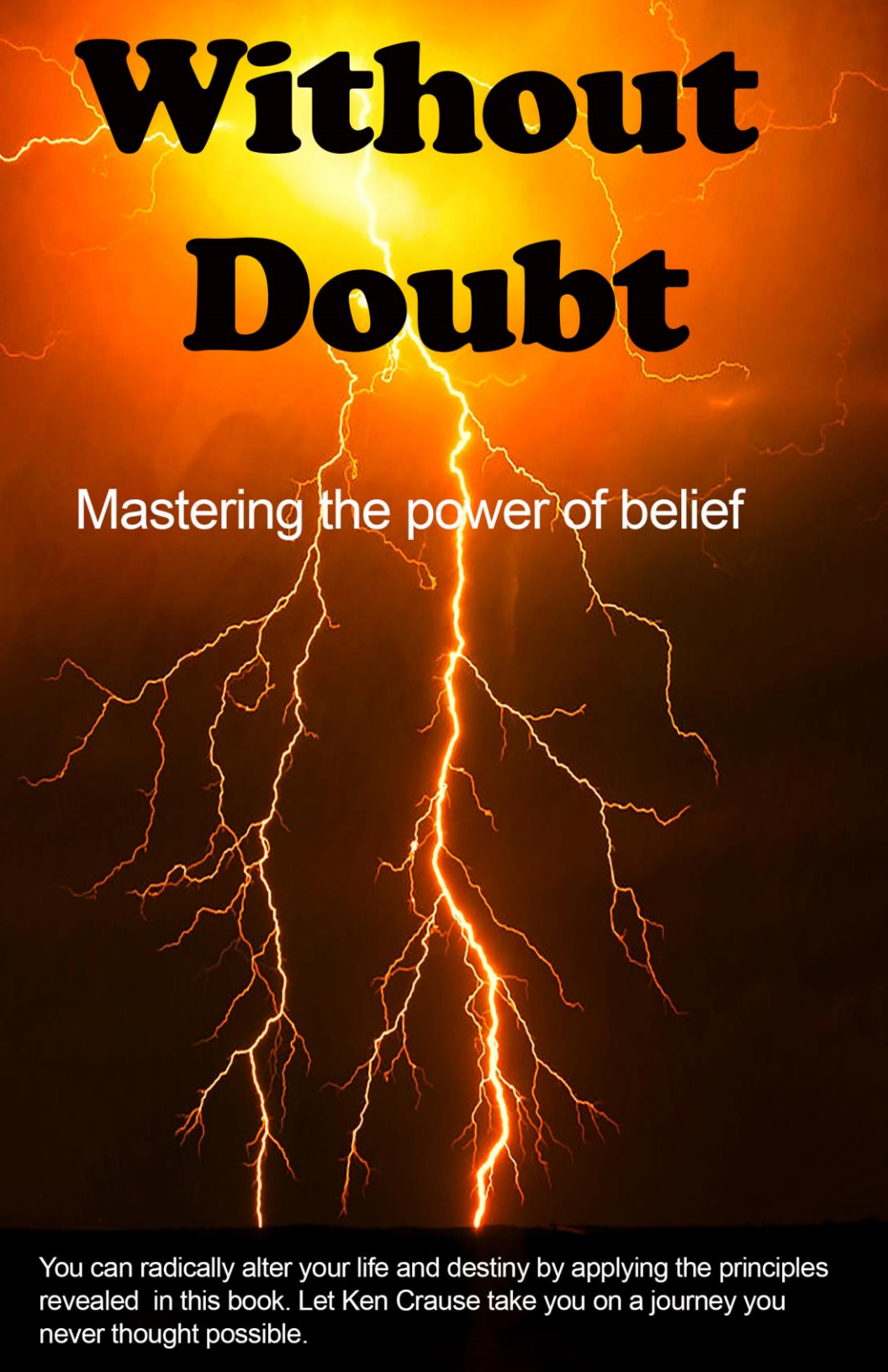


# Without Doubt



Mastering the power of belief

You can radically alter your life and destiny by applying the principles revealed in this book. Let Ken Crause take you on a journey you never thought possible.

Without Doubt is a book that you will want to keep and read repeatedly throughout your life. We need to be constantly reminded of the truth and thereby reprogram our minds and re-order our lives. The information contained in this book will transform your life if you will put into practice the principles explained in this book. To master it, you will want to read and reread it often until you fully grasp the life changing truths contained in it.

### **About the Author:**

Ken Crause is an entrepreneur, a former pastor, public speaker, and a Bible teacher. His life's experiences are many and varied, filled with successes and failures. Ken's experiences, research, and Bible knowledge bring to bear a most remarkable balanced background and knowledge on the subject of belief and how it affects and explains everything in human experience. You will easily be able to relate to him and his experiences.

Copyright 2024 by Ken Crause  
All rights reserved  
Self published

International Standard Book Number (ISBN) 9 781643 160498

Unless specifically stated, all scriptures quoted are translated by the author into plain English from the King James Version of the Bible.

*All quotes from the Bible contained in this book are designated by being in italics.*

You can radically alter your life and destiny if you understand the principles in this book and apply them. Let Ken take you on a journey of discovery you never thought possible.

## **Dedication**

This book is dedicated to my mother, the woman who has taught me more about practical faith than any other person I have ever known, not in words but in deeds. She passed away (October 31st, 2017) at 88 years and 7 months of age. On one occasion, she survived a staph infection after the doctor called the family to say their good-byes, because she was not expected to make it through the night. She also had a brother die from it - but not her. She stubbornly refused to die from that. Several of her sisters died of breast cancer. Her mother too died of cancer at a very early age. But, my mom refused to accept cancer as her destiny. She resisted any thought that she would ever have it and in fact was so convinced that she never even bothered being checked - because as she said, I will not give the devil an opportunity to get me thinking about it. She also flatly often stated that she would not die of any disease and in the end, she died of old age, her organs finally shutting down.

Throughout her life, she has been a woman of faith. My own first experience with a miracle was when I snapped my collar bone in two while playing rugby at the age of fourteen. My mom prayed for my healing and even though I thought it was a waste of time and that she was just crazy, I took the sling off my arm in 3 days and was completely healed.

On another occasion I was about to lose my business because I had to have \$10,000 by the next day or it was all over. I was depressed, but my mom came to my office, and walked through it yelling out loud, we are not going under, we are going over. Miraculously the next day a poor widow I knew felt inspired to help me when she heard of my plight. She was not told how much I needed just that I needed help. She handed me an envelope and inside was a cheque for exactly \$10,000. I was blown away to say the least. I had no idea she even had that kind of money. My mother's faith prevailed once again for me when I didn't have an ounce of faith myself.

There are many other stories I could share but these will suffice to be an example of what can happen when you truly believe – whether for health or finances. I will be covering mostly these two aspects in this book because both are something we all desperately need.

Thank you, mom, for your example, courage and wisdom. I pray that through this book, the heritage you gave me will live on and bless many others in time to come.

I also want to dedicate this to my dear friend and psychology mentor, Harry Sparkes (who lived to the ripe old age of 95). My many conversations with Harry, who taught psychiatric nursing in Bermuda for many years, gave me a greater insight into mental illness and enabled me to write this book with greater understanding and insight.

# INDEX

Introduction  
Does belief or faith really make a difference?  
What you believe affects everything  
Gardening  
Reason for writing this book  
Divergent thoughts  
Miracles are for everyone  
Psychology and natural science  
Negative emotions can and will hurt you  
Does Prayer Really Work?  
Do you really believe?  
The power of the spirit is given to all men  
Keep on trying

## CHAPTER 1.

You already have everything you need  
Looking in the wrong place  
The marvellous power of the spirit  
Learn a lesson from chemistry  
The source of conscious thought  
The will of God and the will of man  
You are double minded  
Outstanding example of faith  
Be careful what you say  
Figuring it out  
How I found the ideal home

## CHAPTER 2.

Natural & spiritual minds  
Conscious and spirit terms differentiated  
Hypnosis – how does it work?  
The terms natural and spirit mind clarified  
What about premonitions?  
Déjà vu  
The spirit cannot reason like your conscious mind  
The tremendous power of suggestion  
Different reactions to the same suggestion  
Auto-suggestion – what you say to yourself  
Overcoming bad habits through auto-suggestion  
Hetero-suggestion – listening to what others say  
Have you accepted any of these?  
You can counteract negative hetero-suggestions  
How hetero-suggestion killed a man  
Satan at work in the church

The power of an assumed major premise  
The spirit does not argue

### **CHAPTER 3.**

The power of your spirit  
Your conscious mind writes your book of life  
What is impressed in the spirit is expressed  
Other spirits and their influence  
How your spirit controls your body  
Faith restores atrophied optic nerves  
Faith restores reproductive problems

### **CHAPTER 4.**

What do you believe?  
Faith Verses Deeds  
What the Bible Says About Faith  
Faith is not a feeling  
The steps down to disbelief  
Unbelief has been severely punished  
God hates unbelief  
The faces of unbelief  
Unbelief disables a man from performing any good work  
Is it God's will?  
Is Faith Necessary To Operate Spiritual Gifts?  
Faith and authority  
The Centurion  
The universe has nothing to do with it  
Why do bad things happen to innocent children?  
The spirit tongue connection  
What is faith?  
Where does faith come from?  
Deterrents to faith  
Be specific  
The trial of faith  
Abraham's trial  
The latent power of the soul  
The "G" Factor  
Believing in yourself  
Does faith in any god work?  
Faith's scope

### **CHAPTER 5.**

Methods don't matter – Only belief does  
Biblical accounts on the use of the spirit powers

Miracles at various shrines throughout the world  
One universal healing principle  
Widely different theories  
Views of Paracelsus  
Bernheim's experiments  
The cause of bloody stigmata

## **CHAPTER 6.**

Principles of healing  
One process of healing  
The law of belief  
Praying for anything requires a conscious deliberate thought  
How blind faith works  
What about fasting?  
Healing at a distance  
The name above all names  
The power of a dominant thought  
Controlling dominant thoughts

## **CHAPTER 7.**

Practical techniques to grow your faith  
Thermostat or thermometer?  
Deliberately impregnating your spirit  
Your spirit will accept your blueprint  
Prayer and expectation  
The power of visualization or imagination  
The thanksgiving & praise approach  
The power of affirmation  
Focusing on God's attributes  
The decree method

## **CHAPTER 8.**

Meditation  
Types of meditation  
Transcendental Meditation (TM)  
Spiritism & the Miraculous

## **CHAPTER 9.**

Hurdles to faith  
Lack of confidence  
Mental coercion  
Easy does it  
Not Willpower but Focus  
How disciplined imagination works wonders

The four steps to success in prayer  
Why you sometimes get the opposite of what you pray for

### **CHAPTER 10.**

Wealth begins with how you think  
You already have everything you need  
The ideal method for building a wealth consciousness  
Why your affirmations for wealth may fail  
Your spirit gives you compound interest  
The true source of wealth  
Sleep and grow rich

### **CHAPTER 11.**

You ought to be wealthy  
Money is a symbol  
How to walk the royal road to riches  
Why you do not have more money  
Money and a balanced life  
Poverty is a mental problem  
Getting the right attitude toward money  
Acres of diamonds  
Summation  
You cannot get something for nothing

### **CHAPTER 12.**

The importance of forgiveness  
Understanding the laws of God  
Three murderers find forgiveness  
Living under condemnation  
How should you react  
How to be compassionate  
All things work together for good  
Forgiveness is necessary for healing  
Forgiveness is love in action  
How to forgive  
The acid test for forgiveness  
The standard of forgiveness – How do you measure up?  
Get understanding and gain freedom

### **CHAPTER 13.**

Mental Blocks  
Habits  
How much do you want what you want?  
Building the idea of freedom  
Replace negative thoughts and feelings

Three steps to success  
Never quit

## **CHAPTER 14.**

How to overcome fear  
Man's greatest enemy  
Do the thing you fear?  
Fear of rejection  
Fear of failure  
Fear of water, heights, closed places, etc.  
Master technique for overcoming any fear  
Normal and abnormal fear  
Abnormal fear  
Are your fears real?  
How to be an over-comer  
He overcame a threat on his life  
Deliver yourself from all your fears

Final Thoughts

References and credits





## **Introduction**

This book is all about the power of belief or faith. You will come to understand its power and how to use it in all areas of your life. But before you begin, I want to clarify some important points.

**I believe that there is NOTHING that is impossible. Just because nobody has figured it out yet does not mean its impossible.** History has certainly shown that. Hollywood's ideas in the first Star Trek movies inspired scientists to conceive of wireless communications, lasers, computers you could speak to who would give you information and more. None of these things existed then. I was a boy when man landed on the moon. My dad told me how as a boy he read of such things in a comic book and his father told him to stop reading such rubbish. Today achievement is accelerating at an unprecedented pace. But despite all these amazing changes some things have never changed. The laws of nature remain unchanged, human behaviour remains unchanged – men are still plagued by hatred, greed, selfishness, depression, sickness & disease, poverty and more.

Like you, I am also on a journey of growing my own faith and writing this book has helped me on my own journey of faith. I can relate (sort of), to a story in the Bible about a man named Elijah; a prophet. The Bible tells us that he was a man with similar emotions and weaknesses as us all, yet he was a great prophet. In one instance he calls fire down from heaven to prove his God is greater than a god by the name of Baal who many in that day worshipped. Yet shortly after that, he hears that Queen Jezebel has put a bounty on his head. What does this great man of faith do? Did he threaten Jezebel that he will call fire down on her? Does he warn her not to mess with him or else? Does he trust God to protect him from her? No! Instead, he runs for his life into the desert to hide. I have experienced some great miraculous things myself and failed miserably at other times. This book is written to help us all to live more each day by faith and overcome all our obstacles as we grow in faith.

Secondly, with regard to health issues, I want to make it abundantly clear that I am not in the slightest bit against doctors or modern medicine. They have and do perform amazing work and save many lives because of their efforts and care. I do however believe that real faith is the most powerful source of health and healing. Faith in your doctor or in medications can also bring healing.

You will also come to see the difference between faith and hope and why hope produces no miracles. You will come to see why many who claim to have faith fail – because they in fact had hope and not real faith which will be clearly defined throughout this book. As with natural laws such as gravity that apply to all those who live on the earth, so are there spiritual laws that apply to all people.

This book is filled with learning garnered from my personal experiences, the experiences of others, psychology, religion, the Bible and various stories compiled over many years and writings of others. You will find many references to the Bible because I am most knowledgeable on the Bible and do personally believe it to be filled with the truth and believe it contains wisdom. I make no apology regarding this, but I do not by any means dismiss the wisdom learned through other wise men and scientific research. You will come to see as I have that true science and experience is in fact congruent with the teaching of the Bible and does not contradict it as some who are ignorant of what the Bible teaches suppose.

Any serious student of science and psychology will find this book enlightening and making a lot of sense. In a sense, this book is written to bring an understanding of the correlation between psychology, natural science and religion and how they are inextricably connected. What you are about to learn applies to all people regardless of their religious or non-religious views. It has no bearing on age, race or culture but is practical and if applied, life changing to anyone who pays attention and puts into practice what will be revealed in this book.

Before you make any judgment, I would encourage you to read the whole book and then decide. There may be things you may at first disagree with or find offensive. I hope that despite that, you will keep reading and carefully ponder the many things I will reveal in this book. Please do not discount everything until you have honestly considered everything I will reveal in this book.

Above all, don't knock it until you have honestly tried it. Sadly, many people read books and gain knowledge, yet few ever act on the knowledge they have gained or put it into practice. Our insatiable desire for knowledge is worthless unless we act on that knowledge and apply what we have learned to our own lives and situations. The Bible admonishes, *"but be doers of the Word and not hearers only, thereby deceiving yourselves."* James 1:22. I hope you will read this book many times and absorb the information herein and change your life in a miraculous way just as I and others have. I wish you the very best of success.

Throughout this book, I will use the term "spirit" to represent that part of your mind often referred to as your subconscious mind, deeper self or other terms used to describe the "inner man".

And one final thing before we get started. The term man or men used throughout this book is intended to be gender neutral and refers to men, women and children. I am sorry if this offends those of you who insist on being "politically correct", because that is not my intention but rather for ease of writing.



## **Does Belief or Faith Really Make a Difference?**

In 2010, Canada played host for the winter Olympics. For the first time, Canada won a gold medal at an Olympic Games it hosted, having failed to do so at both the 1976 Summer Olympics in Montreal and the 1988 Winter Olympics in Calgary. In contrast to the lack of gold medals at these previous Olympics, the Canadian team finished first overall in gold medal wins and became the first host nation—since Norway in 1952—to lead the gold medal count, with 14 medals. In doing so, it also broke the record for the most golds won by a NOC at a single Winter Olympics (the previous was 13, set by the Soviet Union in 1976 and matched by Norway in 2002) *Source: Wikipedia*

Was it just luck or in the stars that Canada was able to do so well? Not likely. As the time drew closer to the Olympics, a media campaign also began. The television, radio and newspapers all carried the same theme – “Just believe”.

When I first saw the ads, I must admit I was somewhat cynical. Just believe what? Do they really think that by just believing that Canada will do well in the Olympics, that they will? Boy was I ever wrong. By repeating this over and again and by the athletes themselves doing so, they became more convinced and more determined that they would win and so they did.

What I am about to show you and tell you will blow your mind. Yet it is true and verifiable by many sources all around the world. Your life will never be the same.

### **What you believe affects everything**

Let me tell you an interesting story about a man named Michael Landon. Michael became famous for his acting roles in the TV series, Little House on the Prairie and Bonanza. But let me tell you something about Michael Landon that you may not know. Michael was a scrawny less than average little boy. As many like him, he was bullied and teased and not “part of the in crowd”. Then as it happened, Michael was required, along with all the students to learn track and field events at school. The first event they tried out was throwing a javelin. Michael had never thrown a javelin before. But on his very first attempt, Michael threw the javelin substantially further than anyone his age had ever thrown it. He became a star and a sensation overnight. From a nobody to a hero. Michael had found his talent and worked on it passionately. He started going to a gym, working out and strengthening his upper body so that he continually led his school in winning at javelin throwing events.

Michael went on to get a scholarship at a major university because of his achievements but then tragedy struck. Some of the “jocks” at university felt threatened by him and did not like Michael. It was the 1950’s, when crew cut hairstyles were the norm. But Michael was hardly the norm. You see, Michael had very long hair. So, the jocks caught him one day and cut off all his hair.

After this happened, something very strange happened. Michael was no longer able to throw the javelin like he used to be able to. He tried working out harder and tried everything he knew how to get back into form but without avail. Then one day in an exerted effort to overcome his problem, Michael threw out his shoulder, tearing the ligaments and his fame and career as a javelin thrower came to an abrupt end. So, what happened?

As it was later learned, the reason Michael had long hair was because from an early age Michael heard and loved the story of Samson in the Bible. He truly believed that long hair was what gave him strength and subconsciously when he lost it, he lost his strength just as Samson did. But was long hair the reason he could throw the javelin? Of course not. It was his deep-seated belief that his hair caused him to be that way. Strangely, it affected his physical body so that he could no longer do what he had done hundreds of times previously.

A parody of this effect was created in the cartoon Dumbo. In this case Dumbo is convinced by a mouse that if he held a magic feather in his trunk he could fly. The reality was his larger than average ears that worked like wings could be used to help him fly. Then in the middle of a circus performance, he loses the feather and immediately begins to fall. But this is a cartoon and there needed to be a happy ending. In the few seconds as he fell the mouse convinced him that the feather actually wasn't magic, and he could in fact fly without it. Disaster was aborted, and Dumbo once again started to fly. But in our world, changing one's thinking that fast is not that easy and disasters occur all the time - all brought on by our wrong thinking or belief.

### ***WE UNDERESTIMATE THE POWER OF BELIEF***

The experience of Michael is not so strange, because every one of us has limiting beliefs. By limiting, I mean we have come to false conclusions about our abilities and who we are. We have also failed to see that our inadequacies and our differences from others are the very thing that make us unique and empower us to be exceptional in life. We have limited our experience by the very things we believe deep down inside. If you believe you can – you can, and if you believe you can't – you can't. Our beliefs cause us either to try or give up before we even begin.

Desire alone will not change anything though. You must create your reality first in the realm of the spirit (your deepest thoughts) - deliberately. Then and only then will you experience this new reality in the physical or natural plane.

### **Gardening**

Understanding gardening will help you understand the premise and the conclusions that will be drawn in this book. So, let's take a look at a lesson from nature.

So, you have decided to have a garden. What will be in that garden? Will you leave it to nature and be happy with whatever randomly grows there? If not, how will you plant anything else? The first step in creating a garden is to till the soil to loosen it up so that it becomes receptive to your proposed seed and removes all the weeds currently growing there. If it remains hard, it will not allow the seed to take root and grow and so it will wither and die. So, it is with your spirit. Your conscious mind is the gardener and your spirit is the garden. If your spirit is hardened and not receptive to the seeds you wish to plant, then it will be of no use.

Now let's assume you have cultivated the soil and are ready to plant. What will you plant? Let's say you decide to plant bean seeds. What can you expect to grow there? Will it be tomatoes? I know this sounds silly but bear with me. My point is that whatever seed you sow, that is what fruit you will later reap – and a lot more of it than you sowed.

Planting seeds in your garden takes a deliberate effort by you and does not happen automatically. You must decide on the fruit you wish to get and then plant the appropriate seed. So, it is with your mind and spirit. You need to know what fruit you want in your life and then deliberately and systematically plant seeds that will produce that result. If you do not do this, then all you will ever get is weeds bearing no fruit whatsoever.

But it does not end there. As the sun shines and the rain falls on the garden, soon a whole lot of things start to grow and most of the growth is not what you planted. In our natural garden, they are called weeds, and they are many and very hardy. If you do not get rid of them in a timely manner, they will grow fast and choke out the small plants that you planted, and they will either die or else their ability to produce will be greatly hampered. So it is, when you begin to plant good seeds (thoughts and ideas), what will spring up in your garden (spirit) will also be weeds along with the good seed. Because our world is cursed, these are to be expected and dealt with. So just planting good seeds is not enough. You may also need to water those plants regularly since rain seldom falls frequently enough to sustain good growth in a garden and you need to pluck out the weeds continually. The seeds of thoughts and ideas that you deliberately plant into your spirit will need to be watered. This comes by repetition. The weeds are all the negative thoughts and you must always be aware of them and vehemently reject them when they appear.

So, what I intend to show and prove to you throughout this book is that what you experience in your life is the result of what thoughts you entertain and dwell on whether deliberately and methodically or randomly. If you fail to take deliberate control of your thoughts and focus, then you will become a victim of nature where weeds will grow and take over your life. You do not have to live

your life at the whims of others or your environment. You can change it and cultivate something beautiful even in the desert.

### **Reason for Writing This Book**

For many years now, I have been bothered by a statement Jesus made - "*when the son of man returns, will He find faith on the earth?*" *Luke 18:8* Why would He say that? This has driven me to study faith from every conceivable angle to grasp it, make sense of it and apply it to my own life. Not only that, but up to this point my life was filled with failures and disasters. I needed to find out why, so I could not only change my life but help others too.

Throughout the ages, there has been strong disagreement on how and why things happen to us. Many great philosophers, psychologists, and religious leaders have debated these questions. There are currently those who are of the "New Age" camp who cite many valid experiences and have concluded that we are gods in our own right and have total control over our lives. Then there are the Christians and other religious folk, who are antagonistic because new age rejects God or His authority over the earth or mankind. The book entitled "The Secret" How to attract what you really want, has only served to widen this gap. Then there are those Bible teachers who are labelled as "name it and claim it" faith teachers, who many believe are charlatans seeking to make merchandise of people for themselves. Yet the evidence of this and other books like this, cannot nor should be ignored. Is there a balance, and if so what or where is it? This book is written to explain those differences and make sense of the divergent views. This book will give evidence as to why and how this thing called faith, works for Christian and non-Christian alike. But first we need to ponder the tough questions.

Does God even exist? If so, is God really a good God? If He is, then why do bad things happen to good people? Why does He not prevent wars, rape, murder and other natural tragedies such as earthquakes? If He is a loving God why did He let my wife, husband or child die? Why is one man happy and prosperous and another man poor and miserable? Why does one man have a beautiful home while another man lives out a meagre existence in a slum or on the streets? Why is one man a great success and another an abject failure? Why is one man healed of an incurable disease and another isn't? Why is it so many good, kind people suffer the tortures of the damned in their mind and body? Why is it many immoral and irreligious people succeed and prosper and enjoy radiant health while the righteous suffer poverty and poor health? Is it really God's will to bless some and damn others in this life? Or is there simply no God? How do you explain these things?

Is there an answer that makes sense to these questions? Yes, I believe there is, and you will come to see that the effectual power that produces either good or bad in our lives and world, starts within the workings of your conscious mind and spirit (your subconscious mind).



It is for the express purpose of answering and clarifying these difficult questions and many others of a similar nature that have plagued men through the centuries right up to this day, that motivated me to write this book. The great debate about God's goodness and character is at stake here. The age-old objection to the belief that God is good, is predicated on man's experiences. If our experiences have been good, then we believe God is good, and if they are bad experiences, we conclude either that God doesn't exist or else He doesn't care. You will come to see that it is our failure to understand and utilize the power resident within us through faith, given by God, to change our world for the better. The blame rests solidly on ourselves and not our creator. It has taken me a lifetime to learn and understand the principles and insight I will share with you here. I trust it will help those who read it to find happiness, prosperity and health and above all eternal life.

I have seen and read of miracles happening to men and women in all walks of life and religious views all over the world. At first this was very confusing to me. Others have also observed this and concluded that it is because it doesn't matter what brand of religion you adhere to; that all religions are okay. But as you will see as you read this book, miracles are not a sign at all of correct religious views nor even a result of good living. Miracles will happen to anyone when they begin exercising the amazing power of their spirit through belief. This book is designed to teach you that your habitual thinking and imagery mold, fashion, and create your destiny; *for as a man thinks, so is he. Proverbs 23:7*

You were created in God's image and He is the creator of all things including you. In His infinite wisdom, He created you a spirit being, (unlike the animal or plant kingdom), and this unique aspect of your being has the power to change or affect your destiny and life. God breathed of His Spirit into man (not the animal kingdom), clearly making all men a part of God Himself. You are a spirit being, housed in a body and the two are connected by your soul - your natural mind, emotions and will. As a tri-part being you have a spirit, some call the subconscious mind or sixth sense. This book is written to help you understand the power resident in your spirit to mold and change your material and natural (physical) world.

Over the years, I have come to see a huge disconnect by people attempting to use the power of their spirit effectively because they have failed to understand the connection of our spirit with the infinite Spirit of God, falsely concluding that we are gods in our own right, independent of God. Attempting to factor God out of the equation is to severely weaken the power in us, though by human standards it is still miraculous. What will you be satisfied with?

Another factor in the power being effectual has to do with what the Bible refers to as sin. We understand that in an electrical system, power can be reduced and sometimes stopped when there are factors in the circuit known as resistors or where there is no ground. If you are not grounded in God and if you presume that sinfulness or evil will not negatively affect you, then you have little understanding of the principles of faith. That is why some people appear successful in one area of life and yet have absolute disasters in others. Hollywood is rife with such individuals who have fame, money and sometimes good looks, yet their personal lives are a mess and that becomes the fodder for the gossip newspapers and magazines. Despite their apparent success, they often are in bondage to drugs or alcohol, they cannot stay faithful in marriage and some even commit suicide. This is hardly the picture of success. *"The blessing of the Lord makes one rich, and adds no sorrow to it"* Proverbs 10:22 Which would you prefer?

In my opinion, it is a very sad fact that today education is predominantly based on natural science. Our schools and universities have made natural science into a god. If you dare suggest a different world view, you are ignored or ridiculed as a religious fool or just plain stupid. Natural Science, however, is incapable of acknowledging nor understanding those things that defy natural science which we call miracles. Whether or not you acknowledge it, there are in fact two realms - the natural and the spiritual. The spiritual is actually the cause and the natural the effect. Nothing happens in the world by random chance.

Strangely when the term "spiritual" is used, it is immediately assumed to be "religious". Yet in reality, your spirit is as much a part of your being as your nose is, though invisible to natural eyes. Besides, what is religion anyway? Religion is nothing more than a set of beliefs, usually associated with something greater than man himself. We all operate our lives on a set of beliefs and whether you believe in natural science, God, numerous deities or yourself, either way you are religious. Every government operates its laws on a foundation of what it believes. So, when people suggest a division between State and religion, they are suggesting something that is in fact impossible, because whoever the ruling government is will make laws and enforce laws based on their own beliefs and values. That is why we have divergent government parties and structures around the world.

Nothing happens because it was ordained by the stars or some other natural element, as if they had volition or power of themselves. That is just ignorant idolatry. Such belief is pure superstition and religious ignorance. The Muslim accepts sickness, poverty and premature death or conversely "good luck" as "the will of Allah". The Christian accepts the same as the will of God, as does the Jew. In effect this could be labelled "fatalism" - a doctrine that events are fixed in advance so that human beings are powerless to change them. The Buddhist accepts it as Karma (which may be closer to the truth) though disconnected from

God and ignores God's grace and the ability of men to change their outcomes despite past mistakes.

I will endeavour to explain the great fundamental truths of your natural or volitional mind and spirit in the simplest language possible. I urge you to study this book and apply the techniques outlined herein; and as you do, I am absolutely convinced that you will lay hold of a miracle working power that will lift you up from confusion, misery, depression, and failure, and guide you to your true purpose, solve your difficulties, sever you from emotional and physical bondage, and place you on the road to freedom, happiness, and peace of mind. This miracle working power of your spirit can heal you of your sickness; make you vital and strong again. It can change your relationships and prosper you financially. In learning how to use your spirit as God intended, you will open the prison door of fear and enter into a life described by the Apostle Paul as *the glorious liberty of the sons of God. Romans 8:21*. Not all men however are sons of God despite their ability to perform miracles. Have a look at *Matthew 13:37-39*. This is Jesus' explanation of the parable of the tares (weeds) He has just taught. "He replied, *"The One who sows the good seed is the Son of Man. The field is the world, and the good seed represents the sons of the kingdom of God. The weeds are the sons of the evil one (Satan), and the enemy who sows them is the devil. The harvest is the end of the age, and the harvesters are angels."*

Although the power resident in all mankind is miraculous and powerful, it is nevertheless weak compared with the power of God's Spirit sometimes referred to as the Holy Spirit. Not only that, but God has veto power over the affairs of men and at times, despite our efforts, He will thwart them and cause them to fail when we displease Him or His purposes. However, having the Holy Spirit work with your spirit is like super charging you. Men and women who have learned how to do things along with the power of the Holy Spirit have and are able to do things far beyond what the human spirit is capable of. Such deeds include raising people from the dead. There are numerous records of people doing this going right back to a prophet called Elijah but became more prevalent when Jesus came on the scene.

### **Divergent Thoughts**

In recent years, a wave of debate and controversy has emerged because of a book called "The Secret". The reason I believe, is because this teaching has some mystical elements to it, but more specifically totally ignores God and His dealings with mankind. Many Christians are of the opinion that we are totally subjected to the Will of God (fatalism) and without learning from scripture what that will is, we assume His will includes suffering, loss and pain. These are man's experiences only after the fall into sin by Adam and Eve. Yet Christ came to redeem men from the curse of sin and all its effects. *"work out your own*

*salvation with fear and trembling Philippians 2:12.* That means that we ought to instead enjoy the blessings promised to all who believe and that it is up to us to “work it out” or put it into action. *“But be doer's of the Word and not hearers only – deceiving yourselves.” James 1:22.* We also don't like taking the blame for our misery, so it's easier to pass the buck and blame God or the devil for our circumstances – or maybe our spouse or the government. Every deception and lie comes dressed in truth and so we see that books like "The Secret" contain much truth, but along with it, deception and a lie, because it has factored God out and given "godhood" to man apart from God.

I have written this book to unravel the truth from lies and deception, so that we can all walk in the truth and find blessing in our lives. No, we will never experience on this earth true utopia as we will enjoy in eternity one day. However, we can and ought to enjoy some fruits of our salvation here and now, in direct proportion to what we believe.

### **Miracles are for everyone**

As I researched and studied the Bible more thoroughly, I came to realize that God made man in His image. All men were created this way. God is a spirit and He endowed every man with the capacity to do miraculous things. He established this through the principle known as faith. *"If you can believe, ALL THINGS are possible to those who believe" Mark 9:23*

This is not simply the inheritance or right of Christians or religious people but applies to all who will simply believe. This power resides in the spirit of all men. Jesus often rebuked His own disciples for their “lack of faith”. *Matthew 6:30, Matthew 8:26, Matthew 14:31, Matthew 16:8 & Luke 12:28.* **If miracles were totally subject to God's will, then why would Jesus find fault with His disciples who called out to Him for help?** He also sometimes pronounced healing "according to your faith" to some of the people who came to Him for healing. These folks had no idea that Jesus had come to save them from the consequences of their sins. They were not Christians. They just believed He could and would heal them.

It is interesting to note that the Bible does not record Jesus praying for anyone to be healed. He simply touched them or spoke a word and it became reality. Jesus commanded His followers to do the same miracles and in fact indicated that because He was returning to His heavenly Father, He would send the Holy Spirit to further empower the spirit of His followers to perform miracles. Just before Jesus ascended into heaven, He gave the following commandments to all who would be His disciples - *“Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse those who have leprosy, drive out (exorcise) demons. Freely you have received; freely give.” Matthew 10:8.* Jesus would not have commanded us to do something unless He enabled those who follow Him to do so. Note also that nowhere does it say, “if it's God's will”. There is no commandment given in the Bible that is subject to

some “revelation” of God's specific will as to when we should or should not obey it. Therefore, we can only conclude that healing the sick, raising the dead etc. Are His will. Why would he command us to do these things if we were not capable of doing them?

Through the ages, few truly believe this, and few understand what faith is and how it operates. Few have learned to tap into the infinite power available through belief or faith, though it has been available since the beginning of creation. As you come to understand this and learn to exercise it, your life will change dramatically and never be the same again.

### **Psychology & Natural Science**

These two sciences often contradict each other. In natural science sickness and disease is attributed to genetics, viruses and physical "natural" factors. Yet there is something strange going on. Most have heard about the effect of sickness and disease brought on by the mind known as "hypochondria" or the “placebo effect”. The hypochondriac often experiences physically the sickness or disease they imagine or speak of and focus on. Yet when they abandon their thoughts and replace them with positive thoughts of health, they are miraculously healed.

There are numerous books, stories and examples about the “placebo effect” written. Dr. Joe Dispenza has written numerous powerful books with many research studies that confirm the power of thought. If you have access to the internet, Search “placebo effect” on YouTube and you will have the opportunity to watch some very powerful talks by experts in this new field of science. Dr. Dispenza is a leading expert in this research and is well worth listening to. Again, as you will come to see, his research only confirms what I am revealing to you in this book albeit his explanation for the miracles he attributes to what is now called “Quantum Physics” which in my opinion is just a fancy scientific sounding term for faith. Another expert in research on the placebo effect is Dr. Alia Crum. Of Stanford University. She uses her research to encourage doctors to be better in how they deal with patients but that of course is simply based on the fact that many people believe everything their doctor tells them whether good or bad news. Again, we see that faith in the doctor or in the medicine they prescribe is in fact the most powerful determinant in the patient finding relief and healing. What all their research shows is that we experience what we expect.

Psychologist Dr. Jennice Vilhauer has an excellent talk on Ted Talks about wants verses expectations. In her opening she asks her audience who would like to win the lottery – by a show of hands. Then she asks, who bought a lottery ticket – of those who wanted to win. Most dropped their hands. Her point is that desire is always over-riden by expectation. The reason we don't even bother to buy a ticket is because quite frankly we don't expect to win. Our actions follow what we expect. In the language I am using in this book, I would say that what you want is hope but what you expect is faith, which can be either positive or

negative. We generally act on what we expect, both emotionally and in action steps we take. So deep down what is it you expect will happen in your life? Do you generally expect the best or the worst? This is why many espouse the importance of positive thinking. But in reality, it has to go much deeper than trying to be positive though that's a good place to start. We must through our conscious mind train our heart (spirit) to expect the best and not consider any other alternative.

### **Negative Emotions Can and Will Hurt You**

Before we get into more details on what faith is and how it works, I want to deal with a very critical component to healing or experiencing miracles of any kind. People have prayed for healing sometimes until they are blue in the face and yet nothing happens. I believe that a major component of experiencing miracles such as divine healing is often associated with some deeper problem in the soul of the individual. *“Beloved, I pray that in every way you may prosper and be in good health, just as your soul prospers.” 3 John 1:2.* The Apostle John prayed this for those who follow Christ. According to John’s prayer he was asking God to prosper all the saints who believe, IN EVERY WAY. Your soul is the seat of your emotions, will and character. Faith is a matter of your deepest feelings which the Bible often calls your heart. This in fact is your spirit. All prosperity begins with expectation and healthy thoughts leading to positive behaviour.

I personally observed a miraculous healing of a woman bound in a wheelchair for over 3 years due to muscular dystrophy - as the doctors diagnosed. There is no cure for this disease. Yet, she was miraculously healed. How? This lady had been prayed for many times with no success, but she strongly believed God could heal her. As a side note this is not faith but hope because there was no certainty in her heart and mind that she would be healed. The night I was at the meeting where she asked again for prayer was life changing for her and for me. As the team praying for her began to pray, the leader stopped abruptly and said to her, As I close my eyes to pray, I see the words “hatred and bitterness” flashing in my mind. Is there someone in your life that you hate and are bitter against?

Well as it turned out, she had become severely embittered against her mother to the point that it ruled her thought life. She had allowed this bitterness to develop into hatred. Through wise counsel, she realized she needed to repent before God who commands us not to hate anyone, and she also forgave her mother for the hurt she had caused her daughter resulting in hatred. As soon as she did these things from a sincere heart and mind, the team prayed for her again and this time she was instantly healed, stood up and walked perfectly without any aid. She no longer needed the wheelchair. The power of God within her was released (though it had been there all along) and what medical science claimed was impossible became possible.

Not all sickness and suffering is caused directly by the person suffering though in some cases it is. If for example you chain smoke and land up with emphysema, you brought it on yourself. In at least one instance after Jesus healed a lame man at the pool of Bethesda he commanded him to “sin *no more lest a worse thing come upon you*”. *John 5:14*. You will note that Jesus healed him despite the fact he brought it on himself. Everyone is worthy of being healed and that includes you. Healing is for anyone who simply will believe.

It is our inner thoughts and feelings (the spirit), that causes us to succeed or fail, to be sick or well and be happy or live in sadness or torment. It is allowing negative forces of thought and behaviour (sinful behaviour) that inhibit us from realizing the miraculous power we all desire to experience in our lives and in the lives of those we love.

Remember that all behaviour begins with a thought, which when repeatedly sown, causes us to experience and act out what we have been thinking. Those who have learned to direct the power resident in their spirit have experienced amazing miracles and destinies. It is the power of belief that is the game changer and life changer for all who believe. But a bad conscience will block the healing or other miracle every time. What you believe makes all the difference whether for good or evil. God said that because Abraham believed Him, God accounted that to him as righteousness. Faith is the only thing that pleases God. In fact, the Bible goes so far as to say that *whatever is not of faith is sin*. *Romans 14:23*. You cannot have faith and a bad conscience or negative emotions at the same time.

### **Does prayer really work?**

Do you know how to pray effectively? How long is it since you prayed as part of your everyday activities? In an emergency, in time of danger or trouble, in illness, and when death lurks, prayers pour forth—your own, family and friends. Just read your daily newspaper or Facebook. It is reported that prayers are being offered up all over the world for a child stricken with cancer, or for a group of miners trapped in a mine. Later it is reported that when rescued, the miners said that they prayed while waiting for rescue. Certainly, prayer is helpful in time of trouble; but you do not have to wait, neither should you wait for trouble, to make prayer a habitual and constructive part of your life. The dramatic answers to prayer make headlines and are the subject of testimonies to the effectiveness of prayer.

However, on the other hand, there are countless testimonies of people who prayed, and it did not help at all. In fact, things may have gotten worse. How do we explain this? Some have concluded that God is fickle and unpredictable or else it is His will to not give us what we have asked for, yet the Bible says that *ALL the promises of God are Yes and Amen through Christ Jesus*. *2 Corinthians 1:20*. Some believe that if they just begged more, did more good deeds or

sacrificed something that perhaps they may convince God to hear and answer them. All sorts of weird practices have emerged as a result of these misunderstandings. Prayer candles or flags, rosaries, repetitive chants, self-torture, sacrifices and the like are indications of this. These are all false conclusions because God cannot be persuaded, bribed or begged. He is neither fickle nor a respecter of individuals.

Instead, we see in the Bible, that answered prayers are the reward of those who truly believe in their spirit that what they have asked for HAS BEEN granted to them. It is this absolute persuasion that brings about the answer and manifestation of the miraculous. The Bible says that *"God calls those things which are not as though they were"* Romans 4:17. That is the essence of faith. Calling that which is not as though it were. It is ignoring what can be discerned by the natural senses and believing only what has been visualized, created in the spirit and believed as true. You see, we are to confess what we desire as already a fact, not where we are currently at, and even though naturally we may be sick or poor, by claiming we are the opposite, then by the power of the spirit in us, it becomes our reality. This seems totally illogical to the natural mind, which of course it is because the things of the spirit are in fact contrary to the natural way of doing things. *1 Cor 2:15 says, "The natural minded person does not accept the things of the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him, and he is not able to understand them because they are spiritually understood."*

My desire to work with people and find answers in my own life, has made it necessary for me to study the various approaches, methods and types of prayer. I have experienced the power of prayer in my own life, and I have talked and worked with people who also have enjoyed the help of prayer. However, most have experienced more often, no answer to their prayers and no understanding as to why one time it works while another time it does not. I too have also experienced many unanswered prayers.

People, who are in trouble, have difficulty in thinking and acting positively, reasonably or clearly. That is why its so important to start programming your mind before an emergency arises. Faith is like a plant that grows. The more you exercise faith in all areas of your life the easier it will be to overcome major problems by faith and not be overwhelmed by them through fear and doubt.

### **Do You Really Believe?**

True belief or faith exists where there is conviction. Let me give you an example of the difference. I can look at a chair and conclude and believe the following. The chair is made to sit on. It is made of strong enough materials to hold my weight. It is designed to accommodate my size. Therefore, I believe in the chair. However, that is not true belief or conviction. True conviction is when I dare to sit on that chair believing it will hold me. Do you see the difference? Too many people believe things "with their head" but deep down inside there is no real



conviction. Conviction (faith), always invokes action. This book is written to help you move from head belief to heart faith because until it reaches your heart (spirit), there can be no miracles.

This law of belief is operating in all religions of the world and is the reason why they are psychologically true. The Buddhist, the Christian, the Catholic, the Muslim, the Jew and many others all may get answers to their prayers, not because of their particular creed, religion, affiliation, ritual, ceremony, formula, liturgy, incantation, sacrifices, or offerings, but solely because God has ordained and created all men to receive in life that which they believe, whether good or evil.

Fear robs men of their positive faith as does cynicism or unbelief. These things are what I term negative faith and are as powerful as positive faith. If deep down you expect the worst, that is what you will receive. If you expect the best, then likewise that is what you will receive. The spirit is most sensitive to images formed by the conscious mind. These images can be either deliberately created or could be the result of previous experiences of ourselves or others, or may in fact be "visions" given by God Himself or by Satan. The reality is that we experience what we envision - either by choice or by outside influences we allow to dominate our thoughts.

The law of life is the law of belief; and belief could be summed up briefly as a thought in your mind, accepted as real by the heart - a conviction. As a man thinks, feels, and believes, so is the condition of his mind, body, and circumstances. Almost everyone desires a better life, but few find it because few truly know how to find it. Few know that THE SECRET is FAITH.

### **The Power of The Spirit Is Given To All Men**

The miracle working powers of your spirit existed before you and I were born, before any church or world existed, because God ordained it when he created the world. The great eternal truths and principles of life antedate all religions. It is with these thoughts in mind that I urge you in the following chapters to lay hold of this wonderful, miraculous, transforming power, which will bind up mental, emotional and physical wounds, proclaim liberty to the fear ridden mind, and liberate you completely from the limitations of poverty, failure, depression, lack, and frustration. All you must do is unite mentally and emotionally with the good you wish to experience, and the creative and miraculous powers established in your spirit by God will respond accordingly.

Remember that God created all mankind in His image. Does God have a body? No, He is a Spirit being. So exactly what does the image we were created in look like? I believe the image is found in our spirit. Our spirit is in fact just like the Spirit of God because He breathed of His Spirit into Adam, the first man. Therefore, we must conclude that if we are to function at and experience a

wonderful life, we must take control of our spirit. God is among many things a creator. Everything we see around us (not made by the hands of men) is in fact the result of God's design and deliberate thought. The complexity of nature and its incredible balance is not the result of chance or evolution but by design. Hence, our world and experience too are the result of what we envision, and come to believe. Begin now, today, let wonders happen in your life! Take charge of what you think about and what you believe.

When sin entered the world however, man's spiritual power became corrupted and subjugated to the lies of the evil one - Satan. This has resulted in a "power failure" and its effects have been devastating to all mankind resulting in sickness, poverty, depravity, hatred, greed, and a myriad of other terrible things that has robbed us of the power and glory God created us with in the first place.

### **Keep On, Trying**

If you have ever learned to do something, like riding a bicycle or driving a car, you know that it took deliberate training and practice - repeatedly. The saying, practice makes perfect is indeed true and so it is with this too. Have you ever watched a young child learning to walk? They try, stumble, fall, hurt themselves then get up and try again. They just don't quit because there is a natural drive to succeed at walking. For some it comes quickly for others it takes a lot more effort and time. But regardless, we all learned to walk that way and now we do it without even giving it a thought. If you will try to believe, even if you fail and get humiliated at times, please don't give up. Keep trying until one day it will become easy and natural to believe and your life will be forever changed. Keep trying and practising the methods I will show you later in this book. I can assure you that if you will consistently and faithfully do that, you will see miracles happen and your life will be filled with every wonderful thing.

But what is even better is that you will be able to have faith for others and thereby help others who are weak in faith. That is what Jesus and His disciples went about doing – healing the sick and doing good works for others like feeding and clothing the poor and taking care of widows and orphans.

# CHAPTER 1

## You Already Have Everything You Need

There is a gold mine within you from which you can extract everything you need to live life fully and abundantly. Many are groping in the dark because they do not know about this gold mine of possibilities hidden within their spirit. *God has given to you all things pertaining to life and godliness (God-like-ness) through our knowledge of Him who called us by His own glory and goodness. 2 Peter 1:3.*

As the verse above states, through knowing God, we receive everything we need to live an abundant and godly life. So many live confused and as beggars unnecessarily. It is my desire that those who read this book, and learn to walk in faith, will forever change their lives for the better. Can you imagine your child begging you for food when you have a fridge full of food available? Yet we often beg God for things He has already given to us. We just don't realize it or know where it is, so we can enjoy it.

### **Looking in The Wrong Place**

For centuries, men have focused on the outward, the material and external world around them. Yet few have looked more deeply into the spirit of men, which though functioning intimately with the natural physical mind is quite apart and separate from it.

Psychologists for years have studied the human mind and why people do what they do, yet their understanding has at best been partial because for the most part they have tried to explain these things from a merely natural, physical perspective and apart from God. Generally, many (not all) reject notions of a spirit that is supernatural or can perform supernatural things. We explore outer space, we explore the world around us, but few have seriously attempted to explore the depths of the human spirit.

Even Bible scholars have failed to explain adequately why things happen to us and what if anything we can do about it, yet the truth is "hidden in plain sight" in scripture. My prayer is that through this book, your eyes of understanding will be opened, and that you will come to see the truth and as the Bible says, "*You shall know the truth and the truth shall set you free*" John 8:32.

### **The Marvellous Power of Your Spirit**

You can bring into your life and experience, more power, more wealth, more health, more happiness, and more joy by learning to understand and release the hidden power of your spirit. You need not acquire this power; you already possess it. But you need to learn how to cultivate it and use it; you need to understand it so that you can apply it in all areas of your life.

Power stored in a battery is useless unless connected to something causing the current to flow out. It remains stagnant and useless until directed. You are like a battery with amazing power within, yet it remains useless and untapped for lack of understanding. When harnessed, electricity can be used to create light, power motors and heat things. The same is true of the amazing power we all have access to within our spirits. When harnessed we can do what otherwise would be impossible. But if you really want to connect with greater and lasting power, then (using our illustration of a battery), you connect with God Himself by intimately getting to know Him which is like AC power.

As you follow the simple techniques and processes set forth in this book, you will gain the necessary knowledge and understanding. A new light will inspire you and enable you to realize your hopes and make all your dreams come true. Decide now to make your life grander, greater, richer, and nobler than ever before. Within your spirit's depths lie wisdom, power, and supply of all that is necessary, which is waiting for development and expression. Begin now to recognize these potentialities of your spirit, and they will take form in the world without.

Though faith is invisible, its forces are mighty. Like electricity, which is unseen, it can do things you never imagined when harnessed. We see its effect but not its essence. This by the way is the reason nobody has seen God. To deny God's existence would be like denying electricity. Just because you can't see it does not mean its real. We know it exists through what it does, and any honest student of science will quickly dismiss the fallacy that the complexity of life in all forms could not possibly have occurred as the result of random mutations over millions of years. So too is the dynamic power within us. We must learn how to clear out the things that are blocking the flow of this power, learn to harness it for good and direct it to the end we desire. Within your spirit, you will find the solution for every problem, and the cause for every effect.

Though many have found the term "sin" offensive, it is because they have not come to understand that though certain acts called sin may feel good at the time, they do in fact bring about death, emotionally, mentally, spiritually and physically. It is these things known as sin that block the power we seek and the solution to eradicate them is also so simple that people stumble at it. As with all things God has ordained, eradication of sin and its results is by simple faith in Jesus Christ as the atonement for our sins. *For God so loved the world that He gave His only begotten Son, that whoever believes in Him will not perish but have eternal life. John 3:16.*

Right at the beginning of creation God warned man that sin would result in death. There could only be one cure - the death of a perfect man in substitution for the sinful man. God had a plan to redeem mankind, a plan that was played out through the life and ultimate death and resurrection of Jesus Christ. It was

through His shed blood that atonement was made, and sins were literally "washed away". Today all we need do is, by faith, accept that Jesus took our punishment and simply ask Him for forgiveness. Then believe with all our heart that we are forgiven.

It is this faith that eradicates the power of sin and the negative effects in our lives. Many including the author of this book can attest to the remarkable changes that took place within our being when we simply accepted by faith, the gift of sins forgiven. No amount of sacrifices, religious rituals or good deeds can eradicate the power of sin - only faith in the redemptive work of Jesus. Likewise, all good things come to those who believe and not those who deserve it or have earned it by good deeds. Karma is wrong sometimes. This of course is not to suggest that doing good deeds is not important, it should in fact be the natural outcome or fruit of a heart of faith. First faith, then deeds.

I have seen the power of the spirit lift people up out of crippled states, making them whole, vital, and strong once more, and free to go out into the world to experience happiness, health, and find true fulfillment. There is a miraculous healing power in your spirit that can heal the troubled mind and the broken heart. It can open the prison door of the mind and liberate you. It can free you from all kinds of material and physical bondages.

In the book of Acts (in the Bible), there is a story about two Apostles, Peter and John, heading to the Temple to pray when they encounter a man who was lame, begging. Peter looked at him eye to eye and said, "*silver and gold have I none – but such as I HAVE give I to you – in the name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, rise up and walk.*" Acts 3:6. Peter knew what HE had – the power of God was within in him. He did not pray - "Father if it is your will please heal this man." Just as Jesus did, Peter simply chose to use the power in Him through the Holy Spirit to heal this lame man. There were two miracles that occurred in this story. First the lame man was healed of his lameness, but the second was just as profound. Without ever learning to walk (he was born lame), he was able to immediately, walk and leap as he praised God for his healing. It was not Peter that healed him though, Peter was simply the conduit through which the power of the Holy Spirit flowed by faith from Peter to this lame man. Though the power of the Spirit resides in us it is not of us but of God. Faith is the mechanism that releases God's power through us.

### **Learn a Lesson from Chemistry**

Substantial progress in any field of endeavour is impossible in the absence of a universal principal in its application. Likewise, you can become skilled in the operation of your spirit. You can practice its powers with certainty of results in exact proportion to your knowledge of its principles and to your application of them for definite specific purposes and goals you wish to achieve.

For example, if you combine two atoms of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen, you would get water. If, however you combine one atom of oxygen and one atom of carbon it will produce carbon monoxide, a highly poisonous gas. However, if you add another atom of oxygen, you will get carbon dioxide, a harmless gas (unless of course you are a global warming alarmist), and so on throughout the vast realm of chemical compounds. In like manner, the combination of what you believe can either give life or poison you.

Principles are guidelines that can be applied to any field such as science, chemistry and psychology. Consider for example a generally accepted law: "Matter expands when heated." This is true anywhere, at any time, and under all circumstances. You can heat a piece of steel, and it will expand regardless of whether the steel is found in China, Africa, or Canada. It is a universal truth that matter expands when heated. Another example is water. If you heat water, it turns to vapour and thus expands into clouds. If you freeze it, it turns into a hard mass - ice. It is also a universal truth that whatever you impress on your spirit will become expressed firstly on the screen of the spirit realm and ultimately in experience in the natural realm, no matter who you are or where you are.

Your prayer of faith is answered because your spirit is the creative force through belief that directly impacts the material world. It is the principle of how the material world was formed and how it changes.

Your spirit works according to the law of belief. You must know what belief is, why it works, and how it works. Jesus said in a simple, clear, and beautiful way: *Whoever will say to this mountain, be removed, and be cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart but shall believe that those things which he said shall come to pass; he shall have whatever he said. Mark 11:23.*

The law of your spirit is the law of belief or faith. If you understand how different your spirit works and learn how to direct it through your conscious mind, you will rise from the ashes of failure, sickness and poverty. What you imagine and hold steady in your thoughts without doubt or wavering, will become your reality and experience. It is certain and can be relied on 100% of the time. It is further reinforced by words spoken with authority and conviction as the scripture above indicates. Notice that the scripture above does not say to pray, and the mountain will be removed, but rather to speak to the mountain and command it to move. Even Jesus did not pray for people to be healed, He simply spoke a word over them. The essence of the power is God but is activated only through faith and faith always uses words.

Just like lightning occurs when an electrical charge in the atmosphere finds a ground on the earth, so too do we only experience the power when the power of God, connects with faith (The ground), in our spirit.

One thing I believe that needs to be pointed out here concerning the above scripture is the fact that Jesus was referring to an actual physical mountain. Though it could perhaps be applied as a principle to any barrier. But what is so religious or spiritual about moving a mountain? Religious people always put a spin on faith that is not completely accurate. Just prior to Jesus making this statement, he had cursed a fig tree and it literally died within 24 hours of Him doing so. What is so religious about that? To what holy end was this done? If it was intended as a lesson, surely a more noble act would have done better?

The hang up for most religious people is their perception on the "Will of God." Jesus' first miracle was to turn water into wine at a wedding feast; real wine, not grape juice. What was so religious about that? Was it really God's specific will that Jesus do that? Did he first pray and ask God if it was His will to do that? No!! Though Jesus did many amazing miracles, what he showed and taught all along was the power of faith regardless of what was believed. Do you really think that Jesus cursed the fig tree because it was specifically God's will to kill the tree? I don't think so. It is faith itself that changes the natural or physical environment. That is why he could say that "*all things are possible to those who believe.*" *Mark 9:23*

In the book of James chapter one we read the following;  
*If any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask of God, that gives to all men generously, and will not find fault or rebuke; and it will be given him.  
But let him ask in faith, without wavering. For he that wavers is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed.  
For let not that man think that he will receive anything of the Lord.  
A double minded man is unstable in all his ways. James 1:5-8*

You can see a few very important things in this verse. Firstly, it is directed to "any man". Secondly it is clear that true wisdom is a gift and can be received by faith. But what I want to specifically point out here is that faith is unwavering. If you are unsure in any way, then you have hope and not faith. Many people feel that God should take pity on those who struggle to believe, and certainly He is gracious but unless and until you have unwavering faith or certainty of the outcome of your faith, then you will receive nothing. God's laws do not change and since He established the law of faith it is sure, dependable and will work every time it is properly applied.

All your experiences, events, conditions, and acts are the reactions of your spirit to your thoughts. Remember, it is not the thing believed in, but the deep-seated conviction in your own spirit, which brings about the result. This is where the struggle really is in our lives. The natural mind is unruly and often like a rebellious teenager or a wild animal. It must be brought under control. Every thought, idea or imagination that is contrary to what we desire must be deliberately rejected and replaced with that which we desire. If you fail to do

this on a consistent basis, you will simply become a victim of your unruly thoughts and land up losing out on the wonderful things possible. *2 Corinthians. 10:5* says, “Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalts itself against the knowledge of God and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;” This is what we need to do in order to triumph in faith. We must stand unmovable on the promises of God in all things and reject out of mind any thought that contradicts the promise. *Romans 12:1* says, “And don’t be conformed to this world: but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what the good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God is.”

We prove the Word of God true through faith, which is the exercise of renewing our minds not to think in natural ways. We are waiting for God to do something while He is waiting for us to do something because He has already given those who have put their trust in Him the authority and means to do it. After His resurrection Jesus declared, “All power in heaven and earth has been given to Me.” *Matthew 28:18*. He took back the dominion and power Satan had over the earth through Adam’s sin.

Satan is no longer the legitimate ruler of this earth, Jesus is, though Satan continues to deceive many and claim dominion; but he is a liar. He is the quintessential terrorist or rebel leader. His plan is to recruit as many men as possible in rebellion against Jesus and thereby regain control of this world. An ancient occultic practice by people seeking fame and fortune is to “sell their soul to the devil” in order to win. This is practised more widely than people think by famous actors, musicians and the like. Satan knows all too well how to appeal to the selfishness and greed of men and those who follow him may at first seem to prosper but it won’t be for too long because he is a liar and what he really wants is control over men in his quest to fight against Jesus and those who follow Him.

If you understand what happens with a military coup, you will understand what Satan is up to. He is trying to overthrow the rightful government of Jesus Christ over the earth. By using the spirits of those who have not by faith acknowledged Jesus as Lord, he propagates rebellion, causes suffering which in turn causes people to blame God for it and thus turn against Jesus. His biggest targets are men and women of influence because through them he can lead many astray and recruit many in their rebellion against Jesus.

### **The Source of Conscious Thought**

Where do thoughts come from and can they be controlled? Thoughts are of the realm of the spirit which is the power that manifests the natural or physical. There are in fact 3 distinct sources of all thought.

The first source of thought is God. If you were to acquire a computer, you would need to learn how it works and understand what it can do in order to effectively use it. It was not created to cut wood for example. Knowing how a thing works



is a pre-requisite to operating it properly and effectively. In like manner, we are the creation of God and hence we need to read the "owner's manual" to fully understand how it works and was created to work. God has revealed these things to us through His manual - the Bible. Failure to read the manual means that you will be doomed to trial and error and may waste your life while aimlessly trying to figure it out. God also at times deliberately places ideas "visions" into the minds of men.

The second source of thought is from the opposite side - evil. In all of nature we see the balance of positive and negative. In some cultures, it is expressed as the yin and yang, light and darkness, good and evil, positive and negative. Therefore, to conclude that in the realm of the spirit is only good is to be ignorant. If God embodies all that is good, then there must be an opposite also. The Bible reveals to us that there is indeed such an opposite and he is called Satan. His express character is 100% contrary to God. His work is everything negative. He is the source of all failure, poverty, sickness, sorrow and defeat. He is also revealed as the great deceiver. He is the father of lies and through his deception seeks to rob us of what rightfully belongs to us and has been given to us by God. All negative thoughts and imaginations find their roots in him and his kingdom of evil spirits. If these imaginations or thoughts are not deliberately rejected, then they will create in our experience everything contrary to our true desires and God's desire for us His beloved creation.

I know that what I am about to say will be controversial, but I think it needs saying anyway. I have heard so many preachers declare that Satan cannot read your mind. I have no idea where this theology comes from because there is no scripture to back it up. But since Satan can inject thoughts into your head do you not think he can "hear" your thoughts? Of course he can, because they are in the realm of the spirit. You can fight the evil thoughts and Satan himself totally mentally with your thoughts and win without ever saying a word with your physical mouth. Remember the battle of faith is a battle of thoughts that start with your conscious mind and end in your spirit mind.

The third source of thought is from our own experiences. This comes to us in the form of either our personal experiences or by what we have heard, seen or felt. It may be based on what we saw in a movie, read in a book or heard about someone else's experience. We thus form an opinion right or wrong and ultimately experience the result of such thoughts. Either we become imprisoned by our own thoughts or we reject such thinking and over-ride them with the positive images and thoughts we desire. We can only do this when we understand the source of our thoughts and deliberately respond either by accepting them or rejecting them.

Cease buying into the false beliefs, opinions, superstitions, and fears of others. Stop accepting the lies implanted in your thoughts by Satan, the father of lies whose express character and purpose is to rob us of all God has given to us to enjoy and to destroy us. Begin to believe in the eternal truths of life, which never change. Then, you will move onward, upward, and God-ward.

Whoever reads this book and applies the principles of the spirit herein set forth; will be able to pray effectively for himself and for others. Busy your mind with the concepts of joy, peace, health, prosperity, and good will, and wonders will happen in your life. The Bible admonishes us this way, *“Finally, brothers, whatever things are true, whatever things are honest, whatever things are just, whatever things are pure, whatever things are lovely, whatever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things.”* *Philippians 4:8*

### **The Will of God and The Will of Man**

Much confusion has emerged over the years and continues to confuse Christians and religious people regarding the will of God. The confusion is the result of us feeling that God is omnipotent and can and does do whatever He wants, and we are merely pawns in some great "chess game" between God and Satan, or simply that God has a defined plan for your life and hence everything that happens is part of His plan. Many stories in the Bible totally contradict that notion though. Much has been blamed on the will of God that is a lie and in fact the result of our own beliefs and not that of an autocratic God.

In the Bible there is a story about a man named Jonah. Most people have heard of “Jonah and the whale”, although the Bible did not specifically call it a whale but just a great fish. In any case, God calls Jonah to deliver a message to the citizens of a great city then known as Nineveh. But Jonah does not want to do it, so he tries running away in the opposite direction. But God does not let him get away that easily. God sends a fierce wind that just about sinks the ship Jonah is on. Interestingly the other men on the boat interpret this to mean that someone onboard is attracting this negative experience and they need to find out who, so they can stop this. Jonah admits it's him, so their solution was to throw him overboard. Sure enough, as soon as they do, the wind (adversity) stops. God is not done with Jonah yet though, so he sends a fish to swallow him and somehow in the belly of the fish he survives for 3 days. The fish can't stomach him either so swims to shore and spits him out. Then God speaks to Jonah again telling him to go to Nineveh. This time Jonah co-operates with God. But he could have chosen not to. So, although God's will may be clear, it is not fulfilled unless we co-operate with it. In this case, Jonah did, but in the case of the Israelites who left Egypt, only the 2 spies who truly had faith ever did enter the promised land. The rest did not because they did not co-operate with God in faith.

*The gifts and calling of God are irrevocable. Romans 11:29.* As with Jonah and Israel, at no time did God change His mind or His will for them. BUT, in one case His will was fulfilled in the other it was not. The determination is based on the co-operation of the person with His will. As in the case of Jonah, God can and certainly does work out His plan despite our past failures or wrong choices but that is not to say that those choices and the consequences of those choices were His will for us.

Although God is indeed omnipotent and can do whatever He wants, since He is after all God, the most amazing revelation in the Bible is the fact that God has limited the fulfillment of His will on the earth to man's cooperation or choices. If we were not intended to make choices, we would never have been endowed with that ability. Neither would it be necessary for us to preach the gospel. Granted, God does know the beginning from the end but that is not to say that He ordained it that way.

There is another story about a prophet named Elijah in the Bible, who had pronounced a drought over Israel at the command of God and it resulted in a three-and-a-half-year drought. Then God tells Elijah that he would end the drought and send rain. But the rain does not come. Instead, we find Elijah going up onto a mountain with his servant to ... pray for rain. But why is he praying for rain when God already said he would send the rain? Well, the reason is actually very simple. Without prayer by a man on the earth, God cannot fulfill His purposes and will on earth. This is a staggering revelation and only one of many stories that illustrate how God works with man to fulfill all His good will on the earth.

Perhaps we can better understand this principle if we again look at electricity. The power of electricity flows from a positive to negative or ground. My wife and I often used an electric fence to retain our horses. When we first started using one, we thought we had done something wrong, or that perhaps our electric fence controller was faulty. My wife touched the fence and could barely feel any kind of electric flow. Sometimes she felt nothing. Then because we never understood electricity, I kneeled to check the ground wire and from that stance accidentally touched the fence. The shock was so strong it threw my arm right back. After almost falling over laughing, my wife dared to try it again herself only to report that she still felt nothing. Then it dawned on us. She was wearing rubber boots, which prevented the electricity from grounding - which I did when on my knees. If my wife had removed her boots, she would have felt the impact of the power surge herself. Why she would deliberately try it after I just got jolted, I will never understand, but she did.

If we look at God as the positive force and understand that because of our sins and false thinking and bad choices, we have become ungrounded, that would explain why we see no power. But the grounding rod is faith or belief. And

when I say belief, I am referring to a deeper sense of belief we call "Conviction". Belief itself is sterile, if it evokes no emotions or action on our part. **Conviction always involves emotion and action**, which in turn produces the desired objective. A determined person is one who has already settled in his mind, the outcome of which he is convinced.

Now you may be wondering why God would limit the fulfillment of His will to man's cooperation right? Again, I believe the answer is very simple. When God created the earth and all that is in it, He gave it as a possession to man. It belongs to man. Therefore, God will not over-step His authority in the earth since it really is up to us. Countless stories of prayer and answers to prayer indicate that God only moves in the earth when prayer by a man is made in faith. This agreement by a man with God results in the miracles. The power flows as it does when an electric source is grounded.

When asked by His disciples how to pray, Jesus said to say, *"Your kingdom come, your will be done on earth as it is in heaven"* Matthew 6:10. This gives God permission to intervene in our world through us. God gave us dominion of our world and we have messed it up, but if we are to change our world, then it will only come through faith and prayer, working in cooperation with God who created it all for our benefit. Sickness, disease and failure are the result of man's failure and not God's. When we cooperate by praying according to God's general or specific will, in faith, we will always see those prayers answered.

In the beginning, He created everything perfect - without sickness or death. So, we must stop blaming God for wars, sickness, disease, premature death and poverty. These are all of our own doing and God will not intervene unless we pray and believe in faith. The responsibility rests squarely on our shoulders. When you grasp this, you will cease saying "why does God allow sickness and suffering or wars, rape, murder and such awful things that people experience". You will understand that God greatly desires to prevent such things but cannot do so unless we choose to stop it and draw from the unfathomable and unrestricted power of God to change things on the earth.

One other thing that is important to understand is that the principle of faith that Jesus taught and practised is available to all men - regardless of their religious views. Faith is a spiritual law that affects all people just as surely as gravity is a principle that affects all material things and people on the earth - Christian and non-Christian alike. Jesus said *"whosoever will say to this mountain..."* We are waiting for God to do something. We beg Him in prayer and if we don't get what we begged Him for, we get mad at Him or conclude He doesn't care or else He does not even exist. These are childish responses based on ignorance. When we come to understand that we do not operate apart from God and God does not operate apart from us, then we learn to work in cooperation with Him on the

earth. The result is what we call miracles. So, with that in mind let us now look at how our mind works so that we can effect the changes we ought to.

### **You Are Double Minded**

You have two distinct minds that are inextricably connected. These are your natural mind and your spiritual mind or subconscious mind. These two minds are essentially unlike. Each is endowed with separate and distinct attributes and powers yet linked together. The language generally used to distinguish the two functions of your mind is as follows: The objective and subjective mind, the conscious and subconscious mind. The natural mind or spirit, the waking and sleeping mind, the head and the heart, and many other terms. I have chosen to use the terms “conscious mind” and “spirit” to represent the dual nature of these minds throughout this book.

An excellent way to get acquainted with the two functions of your mind is to look upon your own mind as a garden. Your conscious mind is the gardener, and you are planting seeds (thoughts) in your spirit mind all day long, based on your habitual thinking. As you sow in your spirit, so shall you reap in your body, experiences and environment. Begin now to sow thoughts of peace, happiness, right action, good will, and prosperity. Think quietly and with clear focus on these qualities and accept them fully in your conscious reasoning mind. Continue to plant these wonderful seeds (thoughts) in the garden of your mind, and you will reap an abundant harvest.

Your spirit may be likened to the soil, which will grow all kinds of seeds, good or bad. If you sow bad seed, you can expect a bad crop. *Do men gather grapes of thorns, or figs of thistles? Matthew 7:16.* Every thought is, therefore, a cause, and every condition is an effect. *And be not conformed to this world but be transformed.... by the renewing of your mind. Romans 12:1,2.* The purpose of this book is to show you exactly how to renew your mind. Transformation in all areas of your life is the result of a transformed mind first. It is certainly not about methods or technique but by what is believed.

For this reason, it is essential that you take charge of your thoughts to bring forth only desirable conditions. When your mind thinks correctly, when you understand the truth, when the thoughts deposited in your spirit are constructive, harmonious, and peaceful, the miraculous working power of your spirit will respond and bring about harmonious conditions, agreeable surroundings, and the best of everything. When you begin to control your thought processes, you can apply the powers of your spirit to any problem or difficulty. In other words, you will be consciously cooperating with the infinite power of God and omnipotent law, which governs all things by being a ground, allowing the power to flow.

Remember, it is the world within, namely, your thoughts, feelings, and imagery that makes your world without, which I aim to prove to you throughout this book.

It is, therefore, the creative power endowed upon all men by the creator God Himself, and everything, which you find in your world of expression, has been created by you in the inner world of your mind consciously or unconsciously. You are in fact the master of your own destiny, through what you believe or fail to believe. God has ordained it to be so. We are not victims of the whims of God (though we clearly see in the Bible that God is not in the slightest bit whimsical), or the evil intent of the Devil sometimes known as Satan. Our lives are not dictated by the stars, some fortune teller, our DNA or by what side of the track we were born. All mankind has been given the power to choose, but many do not, because they do not understand this and instead believe a lie which robs them of the power granted to them by their creator.

Knowledge of the interaction of your conscious mind and your spirit will enable you to transform your whole life. In order to change external conditions, you must change the cause. Most men try to change conditions and circumstances by working with conditions and circumstances. That is like trying to change the fruit of a tree rather than the root. To remove discord, confusion, lack, and limitation, you must remove the cause, and the cause is the way you are using your conscious mind. In other words, the way you are thinking and picturing in your mind.

You are living in a fathomless sea of infinite riches and possibilities. Your spirit is very sensitive to your thoughts. Your thoughts form the mold or matrix through which wisdom, vital forces, and the power of God flow through your spirit. The practical application of the laws of your mind as illustrated in each chapter of this book will cause you to experience abundance for poverty, wisdom for superstition and ignorance, faith for fear, joy for sadness, light for darkness, success for failure, and freedom from the law of averages. Certainly, there can be no more wonderful blessing than these from a mental, emotional, spiritual and material standpoint.

It is fascinating and intensely interesting to observe how you can speak authoritatively and with conviction to the sometimes-irrational response of your mind, bringing silence, harmony, and peace to your mind. The spirit is subject to the conscious mind, and that is why it is called spirit or subjective. The natural mind which if left uncontrolled will naturally gravitate to the negative and bring all kinds of suffering and problems because it will sink into your spirit which will grow those thoughts and produce the fruit of those thoughts. It is therefore critical to take control through your conscious efforts and mind to tell this servant (your spirit) what to do and it will obey.

It is the servant that does what it is told by the master, your rational or conscious mind. The spirit is the clay and the conscious mind the potter who molds the clay. Clay left to itself could take any form but never anything useful or good. In the hands of a master potter, the clay can take any form desired by the potter. “Whatever a man can conceive and believe he can achieve”. Napoleon Hill

### **Outstanding Example of Faith**

Jesus marvelled at the faith of the centurion man who sent his servants to Him to ask for the healing of his servant. His message to Jesus was that there was no need for Him to come and touch his servant but rather just speak the word. He also spoke about authority stating that he knew all about authority and that when he himself told a servant to go here or do this they did it at his command. In like manner, he knew, (believed), that Jesus had authority over sickness and therefore He could, at a distance, speak healing and it would be done. Jesus referred to him as one who had exceptional faith – greater than anything he had seen in all of Israel – including his own disciples. Remember that this man was not a Jew. He was a Roman military commander who had heard about Jesus. Yet his faith exceeded even that of the disciples. God is no respecter of individuals but honors faith regardless of who has it.

In like manner, we have power over our own spirit, and we need to instruct it in faith knowing of a certainty that it will be done. For those who are followers of Jesus Christ, you have also been given authority over demons, Satan himself, sickness and disease, poverty, nature and even death. This is especially true for those who have experienced the baptism of the Holy Spirit as experienced by the disciples on the day of Pentecost. Jesus foretold the purpose of this by saying, *“but you shall receive power after you are baptized in the Holy Spirit. Acts 1:8* After Pentecost we see this power demonstrated in the works and experiences of the disciples. Sadly, many today have experienced this baptism yet failed to release the power because they are waiting for a feeling instead of operating in faith that they have the power.

### **Be Careful What You Say**

When you repeatedly say to people or yourself, “I can’t afford it,” then your spirit takes you at your word and sees to it that you will not be able to acquire what you want. As long as you persist in saying, “I can’t afford that car, that holiday, that home, that promotion,” you can rest assured that your spirit will follow your orders, and you will go through life experiencing the lack of all these things.

### **Figuring It Out**

One of the reasons why people who begin to change their belief systems fail is that they get brought back to their rational mind which cannot produce anything and in fact will act as a resistor to prevent the desire of your faith. Your rational mind cannot figure out how to do the things that your spirit does, but it has the right and ability to command it. This is perhaps why it has been observed all over the world that highly educated people seldom experience supernatural things or miracles. Instead, we see them most often, in cultures where there is less education and perhaps even superstition. They rely on their belief rather than their intellectual abilities or scientific knowledge. You cannot allow yourself to try to figure out how to bring to pass what you have believed. You must relax, be at peace and visualize that which you have asked for as already yours and know that your spirit will figure out how to make it happen. Instead, focus your rational mind on rejecting negative hurtful thoughts and direct your spirit with faith.

### **How I Found the Ideal Home**

Shortly after I was remarried, my wife and I found ourselves raising seven children. One day we decided to sit down and write out what the ideal home for our family would look like. We were renting so had faith only to believe we could find this house on the rental market. We wrote down meticulous details. It had to be 5-10 acres, have at least 5 bedrooms, a wood burning fireplace, on city water and sewer (now that's a stretch since most acreages are NOT on city services), It had to have a paved driveway, fruit trees and rose bushes – I love roses. It also had to have a barn for our horses. We wanted a 3-level split house also with a nice deck overlooking the pasture. The rent had to be between \$1,300 and \$1,500 per month. It also had to be private – preferably on a dead-end road yet close to schools. I don't recall any of the other details now but one day out of the blue my sister called my wife and said, I think I found the perfect acreage for you. She had been browsing rentals for some odd reason, since she herself was not actually looking for a place to rent. Neither was she aware of our list, she just thought it sounded perfect for us. We called the landlord and went to view it. The ad left out many details but when we arrived, we were literally blown away. Every last thing on our list was in the house. It was 10 acres, a three-level split, on city water and sewer too and the last house on a dead-end road. The rent was \$1,400 a month. Co-incidence? Not likely.

Where did I come up with this notion of making a detailed list of what I wanted? Actually, my mother taught me. When my mom and dad immigrated to Canada in their retirement years, they were wanting to live close to me. Mom asked me to look out for a place for them to rent. I tried getting her and dad to look at a few rentals available, but my mom would barely walk into a house and then just say no, turn around and leave. Both my dad and I just thought she was impossible and very hard to please. We were very frustrated, so I confronted my mom as to why the other nice homes she looked at would not do. She was clear and to the point. It did not have the features I want. Then one day I was driving



to my office and just around the corner from where I lived, I saw a for rent sign. So, I called the owners and went to take a look. After viewing it I immediately called my mom and told her about it. Her and dad came to look and spoke with the owners who felt they were the perfect tenants they were also looking for. Mom then revealed her list (neither dad nor I knew about this list), and she confirmed that this house had everything on her list. They moved in the end of the month and lived happily there for years.

My mom taught me that true faith is clear, it is also stubborn and will not change its mind nor compromise. That was certainly how my mom was. Once she chose to believe something it was only a matter of time before it became reality. I forgot about that incident until I was suddenly faced with needing a home for 7 children. When I did, I told my new wife the story and we did as my mom had done and received the same results. Faith really does work.

The answer to your prayer may come through an advertisement in the paper, through a friend, or you may be guided directly to a particular home, which is exactly what you are seeking. There are many ways by which your prayer may be answered. The principal knowledge, in which you may place your confidence, is that the answer always comes, provided you trust the working power of your spirit and don't waver. You don't have to strive or figure out how or even when. Just believe, visualize it and see it as a reality for you. Be at peace and know confidently it will surely come to pass.

## **CHAPTER 2**

### **Natural & Spiritual Minds**

As previously stated, you have 2 distinctly different minds that are connected yet operate differently. Your natural mind can be referred to as the conscious or rational mind. It takes into account all input from your natural senses and applies meaning of things and experiences in your life.

The other mind is your spirit or non-rational mind. You think with your conscious mind, and whatever you habitually think, sinks down into your spirit (or heart), which creates your experiences and destiny according to the nature of your thoughts.

If you think good, good will follow; if you think evil, evil will follow. This is the way your mind works. The main point to remember is once the spirit accepts an idea, it begins to execute it. It is an interesting and subtle truth that the law of the spirit works for good and bad ideas alike. This law, when applied in a negative way, is the cause of failure, frustration, and unhappiness. However, when your habitual thinking is harmonious and constructive, you experience perfect health, success, and prosperity.

Peace of mind and a healthy body are inevitable when you begin to think and feel in the right way. Whatever you claim mentally and feel as true, your spirit will accept and bring forth into your experience. The only thing necessary for you to do is to get your spirit to accept your idea, and the law of your own spirit will bring forth the health, peace, or the position you desire. You give the command or decree, and your spirit will faithfully reproduce the idea impressed upon it.

Psychologists and psychiatrists point out that when thoughts are conveyed to your spirit (sub-conscious), impressions are made in the brain cells. As soon as your spirit accepts any idea, it proceeds to put it into effect immediately. It draws on the infinite power, energy, and wisdom within you. It lines up all the laws of nature to get its way. Much research has been done by Dr. Caroline Leaf into the biological effects of thoughts and emotions. I highly recommend you read her books. All her research points to the very thing I am sharing here – that thoughts are real and effect real physical experiences.

Sometimes faith seems to bring about an immediate solution to your difficulties, but at other times, it may take days, weeks, or longer. It is not clear to the writer why there sometimes is a time delay since Jesus performed miracles in most cases that were instant. But even some of His miracles took hours or days to complete. The result of faith however sometimes appears to be subject to God Himself and the times He has ordained. For example, God promised Abraham a

son, yet he had to hold on in faith for about twenty-five years before it happened. King David was anointed to be King of Israel yet for thirteen years he was running for his life from his own father-in-law who was out to kill him. He not only lived in caves in the desert but even faked allegiance to Israel's enemies and lived with them for a time. But when the time was right, David did become king. Regardless of the time it may take for fulfillment, faith must remain strong and unwavering regardless of the present situation.

### **Conscious and Spirit Terms Differentiated**

You must remember that these two minds – the natural mind and the mind of your spirit are so intricately connected, that some have assumed they are one and the same mind, but they are not. Your conscious mind is the reasoning mind. It is that phase of mind, which chooses. For example, you choose your car, your home, and your partner in life. You make all your decisions with your conscious mind. With your natural mind, you rationalize things and take in information from your five natural senses. The mind of your spirit however knows things intuitively that cannot be known through the natural senses, nevertheless, is subject to your rational mind.

Your spirit accepts what is impressed upon it or what you consciously and deliberately believe and think about. Belief can also be called the "dominant thought. Whatever the mind preoccupies itself with or is caused to focus on will affect the results. It does not reason things out like your conscious mind, and it does not argue with you. Your spirit is like the soil, which accepts any kind of seed, good or bad. Your thoughts are active and might be likened to seeds. Negative, destructive thoughts continue to work negatively in your spirit, and in due time will come forth into outer experience which corresponds with them.

Remember, your spirit does not engage in proving whether your thoughts are good or bad, true or false, but it responds according to the nature of your thoughts or suggestions. For example, if you consciously assume something as true, even though it may be false, your spirit will accept it as true and proceed to bring about results, which must necessarily follow, because you consciously assumed it to be true. This is why the "placebo effect" works.

### **Hypnosis – How Does It Work?**

Innumerable experiments by psychologists and others on persons using hypnosis have shown that the spirit is incapable of making selections and comparisons, which are necessary for a reasoning process. They have shown repeatedly that your spirit will accept any suggestions, however false. Having once accepted any suggestion, it responds according to the nature of the suggestion given.

Many have witnessed strange and entertaining examples of what people do under hypnosis. The subject must however be willing to be brought to a state of

mind where they are amenable to suggestion by the hypnotist. For years I thought hypnosis to be weird and almost frightening, maybe even demonic. Yet I remember catching wild birds as a child, laying them on their side and then drawing a circle on the ground in front of them and then quickly drawing a straight line away from the circle. At that moment in most cases I could let the bird go and it would just lay there. I later came to realize that hypnotism is all about directing the focus of the subject and thus distract them from what is really happening around them. This is a natural process.

The practitioner of hypnosis can cause their patient to enter a state of focus so deep that they are unaware of anything else. This is not an occultic practice nor quackery, but quite natural. It is merely a way of getting past the natural reasoning mind and speaking directly to the spirit mind of the subject. The spirit mind then responds to whatever instructions it receives. Through hypnosis many have found the power to overcome crippling habits, health and more. In fact, long before anaesthesia was discovered, doctors used it to convince patients that they would feel no pain during surgery or dental work and that they would get well. Their documented results are astonishing to those of us in this generation who have become locked in our thinking to natural science and medicine. What it all proves is that the Spirit mind is apart and separate from the natural mind and can do unimaginable things beyond reason and natural science. The only danger with hypnosis is that you place yourself under the influence of someone else and by giving them this power over you, you are extremely vulnerable. Trusting the hypnotist can be dangerous.

### **The Terms Natural and Spirit Mind Clarified**

Your conscious mind is sometimes referred to as your natural mind because it deals with outward objects. The natural mind takes cognizance of the natural world. Its media of observation are your five physical senses. Your natural mind is your guide and director in your contact with your environment. You gain knowledge through your five senses. Your natural mind learns through observation, experience, and education.

As previously pointed out, the greatest function of the natural mind is that of reasoning. Suppose you are one of the thousands of tourists who go to Victoria, Canada annually. You would conclude that it is a beautiful city based upon your observation of the parks, pretty gardens, unique buildings, and lovely homes. This is the working of your natural mind.

Your subconscious can be referred to as your spirit mind. Your spirit mind takes cognizance of its environment by means independent of the five senses. Your spirit mind perceives by intuition. Your spirit mind performs its highest functions when your natural senses are in abeyance. This is the effect one gains through the practice of fasting. It subdues the natural mind, dulls the senses and thus permits the spirit (spirit mind) to dominate. It is that intelligence which

makes itself manifest when the natural mind is suspended or in a sleepy, drowsy state. This is why the practice of fasting has been used through the ages by spiritual men to change things and connect with God. By denying the physical senses and cravings until they stop clamouring for attention, you can become more aware of the spirit realm and able more readily to focus your thoughts.

I believe that there is a unique biological connection to the spirit mind, and this has been proven through the ages by means of drug induced behaviour modification. Psychiatrists have learned how to "marry" medications with mental therapy in order to help those who have become mentally crippled. Physical health promotes clarity and strength of mind. Sometimes people struggle with mental control simply because of poor physical health or lack of sleep. We are beings comprised of spirit, soul and body and neglecting any part of your being will result in reduced effectiveness overall.

### **What About Premonitions?**

Have you ever experienced feeling or knowing something before it happens? Some people call it a gut feeling or a premonition. With all the many terms used, it sometimes gets confusing, but the reality is that we all have and do experience this type of knowing, that is not related to the 5 physical senses. Many believe that this type of knowing cannot be altered though. Herein lies the wisdom of knowing the power of your spirit. If what you perceive is indeed evil or negative, you have the power in your spirit to resist it and change the outcome.

For example, you get up one morning and have a "gut feeling" that today you are going to be fired. You can either accept it as inevitable and prepare yourself to handle it, or instead you can change this outcome. By resisting it in your spirit, refusing to accept it and determined that it will not happen, you will in fact experience a different outcome. Of course, if you don't understand the principles and power of the spirit, you may simply conclude that the premonition was false but now that you understand the workings of the spirit you will know that it could have been true, but you changed it. We do not have to be victims of circumstance, our feelings or the influences of others. We can and in fact should instead take control of what we accept mentally.

### **Déjà vu**

Have you ever experienced something and then realized that it was familiar, like you had been there before or experienced this before? What is that about and what is happening? This experience has led many to believe in reincarnation. I believe the answer is that in the realm of the spirit there is no such thing as time. Our spirit has in fact already experienced it or seen it because your spirit is in the realm of the eternal and timeless. Thus, when you experience déjà vu it is simply your spirit revealing something familiar because it has been there – though in the realm of the spirit. This knowing things you have not before learned or experienced has resulted in many strange beliefs and religions.

Some have concluded that they were re-incarnated because they have “memories”, usually under hypnosis, of things they could not otherwise know. Your spirit can know things about people and events that the natural mind does not know. This knowing has resulted in the practice of fortune telling (sometimes accurately) and we assume the fortune teller has some special gift. The reality is that our spirit can in fact know things about the future or past that our rational mind cannot know. The danger of believing everything or anything a fortune teller will tell you is that it is faulty at best and if you believe and act on what they say, you will experience what they said. Never put your life in the hands of someone else like that.

However, the result is not because they were right, you made it right through believing it. The fact that someone could know things about you and your past is not proof they are right or should be believed concerning your future either. As I said, your spirit has such an ability because it operates in the realm of the eternal and not bound by time or space. Your spirit can in fact “time travel” because it can see the past as well as the future. The other danger with occult practices like these is that they are usually guided by evil spirits who deny God. The good they do is deceptive because at the core is a poison – a deep deception that will lead you astray. The Bible warns us that sometimes *Satan masquerades as an angel of light 11 Corinthians 11:14*. Trust your own spirit long before you trust anyone else who claims to know your future. Your future is in your own hands and will unfold according to what you believe.

### **The Spirit Cannot Reason Like Your Conscious Mind**

Your spirit cannot argue. Hence, if you give it wrong suggestions, it will accept them as true and will proceed to bring them to pass as conditions, experiences, and events. All things that have happened to you, are based on thoughts impressed on your spirit through your own deep-seated thoughts, feelings and beliefs. If you have conveyed erroneous concepts to your spirit, the sure method of overcoming them is by the repetition of constructive, harmonious thoughts frequently repeated which your spirit accepts, thus forming new and healthy habits of thought and life, for your spirit is the seat of habit.

The habitual thinking of your conscious mind establishes the direction your life will move through the working of your spirit. This is very favourable for you if your habitual thoughts are thoughts of abundance and success. If, however, you allow your thoughts to gravitate to fear, worry, frustration, anger and other destructive forms of thinking then that will bring about failure and poverty in your experience. The remedy is to recognize the power resident in your spirit and decree freedom, happiness, and perfect health. Your spirit, being creative and one with your creator (God), will proceed to create the freedom and happiness, which you have earnestly decreed.

## **The Tremendous Power of Suggestion**

Your conscious mind is the “watchman at the gate,” and its chief function is to protect your spirit from false impressions. Your spirit is amenable to suggestion. Your spirit does not make comparisons, or contrasts, neither does it reason and think things out for itself. This latter function belongs to your conscious mind. It simply reacts to the impressions given to it by your conscious mind. It does not show a preference for one course of action over another.

The following is a classic example of the tremendous power of suggestion. A real-life example was told me of a prank played on a man at a head office of an insurance company in South Africa. On arriving at the office, the receptionist, with as much sincerity as she could muster, asked Jim how he was feeling. Surprised, he asked why it was she was asking, to which she replied, well you look rather pale today Jim - you don't look well. He shrugged it off saying well I feel fine and proceeded to his desk. Thereafter his boss walked by his desk to supposedly talk to him about some matter and in the middle of his conversation suddenly remarked, Jim are you feeling okay? You sure don't look well. Twice in the conversation, the manager remarked about it. Within the next few hours, several other of the staff commented about him not looking well. All these suggestions from seemingly believable sources convinced Jim's spirit that he must be ill and before lunchtime, he was throwing up and violently ill. The truth was that Jim was not pale or looking ill at all. It was all a prank but because Jim's spirit accepted it, it went about to make it a reality physically.

I saw a picture in my uncle's home many years ago. It was of 3 monkeys. One covered his eyes and the caption below read "See no evil". The second had his mouth covered and the caption read "speak no evil". The third had his hands over his ears and the caption read "Hear no evil". I have never forgotten the wisdom of the picture and you would do well likewise to heed the advice. Do not accept everything you hear as truth and do not allow others to make garbage cans of your ears by dumping negative words or thoughts on you. Avoid looking at evil things (Television, movies, and Facebook are a major source of causing images to negatively affect the experiences of those who watch it). I am persuaded that much of the violence, selfishness and sexual immorality of our day has resulted from this mental programming. What you take into your mind through what you see and hear will inevitably affect what you come to believe and hence what you will say. *A good man brings good things out of the good stored up in his heart, and an evil man brings evil things out of the evil stored up in his heart. For the mouth speaks what the heart is full of. Luke 6:45.* Be careful therefore what you say, both to yourself and to others.

## **Different Reactions to The Same Suggestion**

It is true that different people will react in different ways to the same suggestion because of their spirit conditioning or belief. Our interpretation of circumstances

and statements made by others is based on what we think and feel deep down inside. For example, if you feel like a failure and someone whose opinion you respect calls you that, your life will be characterized by failure. If on the other hand you see yourself as a winner and someone you respect calls you a failure, you immediately disregard what they said because obviously they are wrong about you. In fact, it may even drive you harder to prove them wrong. As you can see, the same situation will impact people differently based on how they feel about themselves to begin with. You cannot control what others think or say and you should not allow them to direct your life. Prove them wrong by rejecting their negative statements and believing in yourself in this case. This is a common character trait of people who have become successful.

The dictionary says that a suggestion is the act or instance of putting something into one's mind, the mental process by which the thought or idea suggested is entertained, accepted, or put into effect. You must remember that a suggestion cannot impose something on the spirit against the will of the conscious mind. In other words, your conscious mind has the power to reject the suggestion given. There is an old saying that goes like this, "You cannot stop the birds from flying over your head, but you can stop them from making a nest in your beard". Although a rather strange saying, what is implied is that random thoughts will indeed come into our consciousness, but we can prevent them from taking root by consciously rejecting those thoughts that are not good.

But repetition even of something that at first is rejected as untrue will in time become accepted as true by the spirit. This is how political and cult leaders for years have persuaded normally rational people to a cause they otherwise might not have participated in.

Years ago, I met a young man who was in jail for murdering an old lady. I asked this young man how he came to do it. His explanation was extremely insightful. He had moved to a new city and was looking for new friends at school. He was befriended by a student and one other friend. This friend was big into playing a game called "Dungeons and Dragons". This game is a make-believe roll playing game. This friend got the other 2 into roll playing a scenario where they had to kill a rich old woman and thus get all her money. The woman was portrayed as evil and deserved to die. After months of playing this game, this "friend" revealed that he had a grandmother who was rich but "evil" and just as was rehearsed mentally he suggested they should kill her and together they would all be rich. Like zombies these 2 young men – only 17 at the time, followed through doing what they had been roll playing for months and murdered this woman. It all started with mental programming and mental roll playing. The young man I spoke with came from a wonderful home and would never in a million years think of doing such a thing yet through "brainwashing" he came to believe it was the right thing to do and very desirable to do.



All mental conditioning is the result of repetition. This is true in all human experience. Expertise in any field, be it music, sports etc. all are the result of repetition. However, as soon as you stop practising, your ability starts to decline. That is why professional musicians and athletes continue to practice for hours every day. To assume you can train your mind and mental processes for a fixed period, then stop because you have "arrived" is foolishness. It is imperative to continue to practice and repeat good and wholesome thoughts every day.

### **Autosuggestion (What You Say to Yourself)**

Autosuggestion means suggesting something definite and specific to oneself. It is a technique of reprogramming your mind *"Be transformed by the renewing of your mind. Romans 1:2.*

The most powerful suggestions that affect our lives are mostly what we tell ourselves. It may start with what someone else suggests or says to us or about us but once it becomes internalized into our deep thinking it becomes an autosuggestion that unconsciously guides our lives, our decisions, actions and experiences. What you really think and feel deep inside is what will affect you either positively or negatively.

Joel Olsteen tells a story of a young man who despite coming from a poor family with no hope of a good future, believed he would be able to go to university and get his doctorate degree. He continued through high school to believe it and declare it. He also worked hard to do well in school. His faith resulted in action as it should. In his final year he placed second in his graduation class and as a result was offered 9 bursaries totalling \$1.2 million dollars. He literally "talked himself into it". He had no idea at the time how he would get the money to fulfill his dreams but nevertheless he continued to declare it and believe it long before there was any possibility of it happening nor an understanding as to how it would happen.

As a young teenager I decided I really wanted to learn how to play the guitar. But I did not have one to learn on. Then one day at a youth meeting, I met another young man who told me how he was an only child being raised by a single mom who barely made ends meet. He too wanted a guitar and prayed that God would give him one. Out of the blue one day someone asked him if he would like to learn how to play guitar to which he responded, "yes", but added that as soon as he got a guitar he would learn. This person immediately responded by saying he had an extra one and gave it to him.

When I heard his story, I decided that if he could get a guitar through prayer and faith then so could I. Within only a week of me believing and declaring that God was giving me a guitar, a man from my church asked me if I would be interested in his electric guitar (which is what I prayed for). I told him I would but did not

have any money to purchase it. He told me that was not a problem and simply gave me the guitar. Does faith work? You bet it does no matter how young or old you are. I was only fourteen at the time. Keep telling yourself what it is you desire, that it is yours and it will be yours.

Autosuggestion is simply repeating to yourself something you believe to be true. This repetitive programming will eventually move from your head (conscious thought), to your heart – your deep-seated belief in your spirit. When that happens what you believe will come to pass. So, whatever you desire, need or have the courage to believe for, can be yours if you will only deliberately and consciously sow the seed of new positive thoughts until deep in your spirit you know of a certainty that it is yours. It can and will come to pass once you reach that stage of belief, but it comes about through repetitive thought programming.

### **Overcoming Bad Habits Through Autosuggestion**

Many people are bound with bad habits that they wish they could be free from yet feel helpless to overcome. These could include over-eating, alcohol or drug abuse, pornography and other habits that are destructive. Through telling yourself the opposite you will easily be able to overcome any bad habit. The habit was formed by your thinking in the first place and can be changed, simply by a change of thought.

For example, if you are addicted to cigarettes you likely tell yourself that you need it and maybe even that you enjoy a puff, but deep inside you know it is killing you and you wish you could quit. Wishful thinking changes nothing and trying to use will power, will not succeed either. Instead you need to tell yourself that you despise smoking, that it's a disgusting habit and that you are not going to be held captive by it any longer because you can be and are in control of your life. You start by declaring yourself a non-smoker and imagine how free you will feel not needing to waste money buying cigarettes because you simply do not need it. Every time you light up you think to yourself, this is disgusting, why do I still do this anyway? Not only is it harming my lungs, but it also makes me stink to others.

One of the most common and damaging habits today is that of over-eating. Our preoccupation with food has become endemic resulting in huge numbers of obese people, huge increases in diabetes and other weight related health problems. As with all food disorders such as bulimia and anorexia, eating more than we need to sustain life and health is as much a bad habit and all are the result of our thoughts. Over the years I have watched the occasional TV series on people who are morbidly obese and, in every case, it was the result of what they told themselves about food and about themselves. Many of the women had been sexually abused as children and the sense of self hatred and deep need to feel in control of something drove them to food to deal with their pain. This is in

fact no different than an alcoholic or drug abuser, just a different way to deal with their pain.

What you tell yourself about food will either cause you to eat less and make healthier choices or else it will cause you to eat way too much and select the unhealthiest foods. If you take an honest look at yourself in the mirror, you will see very quickly if you have an eating problem or not. As with all bad habits the road to recovery begins with admitting you have a problem. But diets don't work for long, so it is like a merry go round – on again, off again. The only sure way to lasting health and weight loss is a change of attitude to food. When you say you love chocolate then you will be bound by chocolate and find resisting the temptation to put it in your mouth almost impossible. Preoccupation with food will result more often than not in poor health, and poor self esteem. Stop being victimized by food and your stomach and look at food differently – do you live to eat or eat to live?

If the doctor gives you an antibiotic and tells you to take 1 pill 3 times a day until it is gone, you would do it right? – At least if you intend to get well you would. In like manner, look at auto-suggestions as a prescription to cure you of wrong thinking or as the late Zig Ziglar used to call it “Stinkin Thinkin”. You need to say something different to yourself about yourself. Instead of being a victim and speaking about how you can't help yourself to overcome the habit, see yourself as all powerful, in control and with your conscious mind declare yourself free, visualize yourself free and your desires and cravings will change accordingly. I recommend therefore the use of a statement which you say over a few times, thoughtfully and with as much emotion and visualization as you can conjure up, at least 3 times a day. It will work as an “antibiotic” to the harmful and negative thoughts that have been controlling your life.

Declare freedom, declare independence from the habit and you will be free. But you must start while you are still in bondage to the habit. This practice is really a faith statement which *“calls those things which are not as though they were”*. God Himself does that and He called many great men and women what they were not, before they became who He said they were.

A great story in the Bible is the story of Gideon. The Israelites were under attack and the farmers were getting their harvested grain stolen. We find Gideon at night secretly thrashing the grain hidden from site when an angel appears to him with a message from God. In that message God calls him “a mighty man of valour”. Say what? He appears to be quite the opposite – nothing brave about his behaviour at all. But God called him brave before he was and commissioned him with an impossible task to defeat their enemies. I am sure every time he felt fearful or doubtful, those words rang like bell in his head, “I am a mighty man of valour”. As a result, he became an amazingly brave and powerful man who did in fact deliver Israel with only 300 men against vast thousands of enemies. It

was God that changed the circumstances and a miracle happened because at that final moment, Gideon believed God and acted boldly.

Autosuggestion as you can see can either be constructive or destructive depending on what you say to yourself. Remember that you will reap in experience what you have sown in your thoughts.

### **Hetero-Suggestion – Listening to What Others Say**

Hetero-suggestion means suggestions from another person. It is the controlling power in homes, religion, politics, workplaces, universities and schools. It is the life forming principle of parents to children. We can either build up or tear down our children by the words we say to them, either positive or negative. They will be strongly affected by what you say to them and about them to others.

Suggestion may be used to discipline and control ourselves, but it can also be used to take control and command over others who do not know the laws of mind. In its constructive form, it is wonderful and magnificent. In its negative aspects it is one of the most destructive of all the response patterns of the mind, resulting in patterns of misery, failure, suffering, sickness, and disaster.

Mohammad Ali, the famous boxer was a master of using hetero-suggestion to overcome his opponents in the boxing ring. Right from the outset, he would talk to his opponent suggesting they were pathetic and would deliberately provoke them, then he would simply dodge them until they got so angry that they would make a mistake and that was the opportunity he would take to overcome them. He was by no means the most powerful boxer nor perhaps the most talented, but he was able to overcome all his opponents by the use of hetero-suggestion. He was certainly one of the most intelligent boxers of all time. He also brashly declared “I am the greatest” until he really believed it himself and got others also to believe it. I know we dislike people who seem so arrogant and blow their own horn, but nobody can dispute the fact that people like him succeed, because they truly believe in themselves and believe they are the greatest. Through that belief they find themselves doing what is necessary to be the greatest.

So many people it seems are quick to point out the faults and failures in others which only makes things worse – especially if they believe it and take it to heart. If only people understood that through hetero-suggestion they can build people up, inspire them to greatness and cause them to achieve the impossible. The parent who tells their child that they are special and that they believe in them is wise.

Tim McGraw the famous country singer says that when, at 11 years of age he discovered that his biological father was a famous baseball player, it changed the course of his life. He felt special and inspired to be something great just as his father was. Tim found his talents and passion in music rather than baseball

and whenever he felt tempted to doubt and give up, he was buoyed up by his thoughts that he would be great one day just as surely as his father was. That deep-seated belief caused circumstances and the right opportunities to come his way, bringing into reality his deep-seated conviction of being famous.

### **Have You Accepted Any of These?**

From infancy on, most of us have been given many negative suggestions. Not knowing how to overcome them, we unconsciously accepted them. Here are some of the negative suggestions: “You can’t.” “You’ll never amount to anything.” “What is wrong with you?” “You haven’t got a chance.” “You are stupid.” “It’s no use.” “What’s the use, nobody cares.” “It’s no use trying so hard.” “You’re too old now.” “Things are getting worse and worse.” “You just can’t win.” “Watch out, you’ll get the virus.” “You can’t trust a soul,” etc.

Unless, as an adult, you use constructive autosuggestion, which is a reconditioning therapy (renewing your mind) as we previously mentioned, the impressions made on you in the past can cause behaviour patterns that cause failure in your personal and social life. Autosuggestion is a means of releasing you from the mass of negative verbal conditioning that might otherwise distort your life pattern, making the development of good habits difficult if not impossible. Today we have many tragic suicides due to bullying. This bullying is perpetrated by individuals who strongly suggest to their victims that they are ugly, worthless, should kill themselves and other terrible things. A continual barrage of these hetero-suggestions often convince these vulnerable individuals to believe their victimizations resulting in self hatred, failure and sometimes tragically death. But if they learned how to reject such suggestions and instead tell themselves that they are beautiful, handsome, talented, loved and have a purpose in life they could overcome such garbage said about them and to them by the bullies. My oldest daughter faced this in school but simply decided to fight back by telling such bullies what losers they were and “returned the favour”. This usually caused them to stop bullying her altogether. Perhaps instead of trying to prevent bullying we taught our children how to overcome it, we would not see such devastating results of bullying.

I remember one time when my eldest daughter came home from school sobbing. When my wife asked her, what was wrong she stated that everyone in the school hated her. Knowing that this was obviously not true, my wife probed further to discover that she had been rejected by 2 friends (at least she thought they were friends). The emotional pain was so great that she concluded that everyone hated her. This was obviously a false conclusion and one that many children make when being hurt, bullied or rejected by others. Personally, when I was in school, I was quite confident in myself and if anyone rejected me it did not bother me because evidently (to me), they were ignorant and not worth being upset about. Did I desperately need them in my life? No. There are millions of wonderful

people out there that would not treat me that way so why should I care what that one individual thought of me?

The Bible tells us that the tongue is the most powerful member of the body for both good and evil. It uses the illustration of a rudder on a great ship. That little rudder guides the massive ship wherever it chooses, and the captain need only control the rudder in order to direct the ship. Likewise, our tongue guides our whole body and ultimate destiny. Failure to understand this and harness it will leave you adrift in the ocean of life and confusion, frustration and disappointment will be your experience. You will find yourself sometimes just going in circles, getting nowhere. If this is your experience, then it is likely the result of your mental conditioning or thoughts along with what you say to yourself and others. Use your tongue wisely and good things will result. What you say to and about yourself, directs your course on the ocean of life.

### **You Can Counteract Negative Hetero-Suggestions**

Pick up the newspaper any day, and you can read dozens of items that could sow the seeds of anger, futility, fear, worry, anxiety, and impending doom. If accepted by you, these thoughts could cause you to make foolish decisions, or worse yet, none because you have become apathetic - what's the point of trying? Knowing that you can reject all these negative suggestions by giving your spirit constructive autosuggestions, you counteract all these destructive ideas and thoughts.

Check regularly on the negative suggestions that people make to you. You do not have to be influenced by destructive statements. All of us have suffered from it in our childhood, in our teens and even as adults. If you look back, you can easily recall how parents, friends, relatives, teachers, and associates unknowingly and perhaps without deliberate intent to harm you, contributed in a campaign of negative suggestions.

In some cases, it may have also been deliberate in order to control and manipulate you through fear or guilt. This hetero-suggestion process goes on in every home, school, university, office, factory, political party, church and club. You will find that many of these suggestions are for the purpose of making you think, feel, and act, as others want you to, and in ways that are to their advantage. If you are not conscious of this and on your guard against it, you will succumb to the hetero-suggestions at a subconscious level which will most definitely affect your life.

### **How Hetero-Suggestion Killed A Man**

Here is a tragic story of the power of hetero-suggestion. A man went to a witch doctor in Africa who told him that he had a bad heart and predicted that he would die at the next new moon of a heart attack. He began to tell all the members of his family about this prediction, and he arranged for his family to be

taken care of since he was going to die. This powerful suggestion entered his spirit because he accepted it completely. As the saying goes, “he swallowed it hook, line and sinker”. He stated that this witch doctor had special powers, and he could do harm or good to a person. Being fully convinced in his spirit now that he was going to die, his spirit responded accordingly. Death is when your spirit leaves your body and his spirit did just that. He died as predicted not knowing that he was the cause of his own death. This man's death was not due to the will of God nor even by Satan, though ultimately, he was behind the suggestion through the witch doctor. It was the result instead of his conviction (belief). His repeating the story reinforced his belief that it must be true and so his spirit caused his heart to stop, causing death. Of course, this also resulted in more people believing that this witch doctor had special powers which was not true at all.

Let us look at what happened in the light of our knowledge of the way the spirit works. Whatever the conscious, reasoning mind of man believes; the spirit will accept and act upon. This man was happy and healthy, when he went to see the witch doctor. He gave him a very negative suggestion, which he unfortunately accepted. He became terrified, and constantly dwelt upon the fact that he was going to die at the next new moon. This is actually similar to an oncologist suggesting you have stage 4 cancer and giving you only 3 months to live. If you believe it, you will experience it. He proceeded to tell everyone about it, and he prepared for the end. The activity took place in his own mind, and his own thought was the cause. He brought about his own death, or heart attack, by his fear and expectation of the end. The man who predicted his death had no more power than the stones and sticks in the field. His suggestion had no power to create or bring about the end he suggested. If he had known the laws of his mind and spirit, he would have completely rejected the negative suggestion and refused to give his words any attention, knowing in his heart that he was governed and controlled by his own thoughts and feelings. Like Styrofoam arrows fired at an armoured tank, his prophecy could have been completely neutralized and dissipated without hurting him. Of course, he should never have put himself in such a vulnerable position in the first place by seeking direction for his life from a witch doctor.

The suggestions of others in themselves have absolutely no power whatever over you, except the power that you give them through your own thoughts. You have to give your mental consent; you have to entertain the thought. Remember, you have the capacity to choose. Choose life! Choose love! Choose health! Choose prosperity!

### **Satan At Work in The Church**

In the beginning in the Garden of Eden, the very first words the serpent said to Eve was “Has God said that....?” And then gave reasons why God may have said it that put God in a bad light.

Today there are several preachers who preach faith and prosperity in all areas of life – relationships, finances and health. This preaching is often based on the promises of God – which we will take a closer look at in chapter 4 of this book. It all sounds so wonderful and anyone in their right mind would want to believe everything. BUT.... Satan comes along immediately (even at times quoting scripture himself as he did with Jesus when he tempted Him) to suggest that perhaps we should not believe this stuff. He immediately reminds you that you have prayed before and never got what you prayed for. He will remind you that many wonderful people (and better people than you), prayed for healing and still died. He will suggest that being a good Christian means struggle and poverty and worst of all he will tell you that God’s will somehow over-rides all these wonderful promises. In other words, His promises are predicated on His specific will for you (which may be different), and that we should therefore just accept adversity, ill health or poverty as the will of God for us for some greater purpose. He may even suggest that you are not worthy, and remind you about all your past sinful acts, which somehow nullifies God’s promises. Can you relate?

The reality is Satan is still using the same question in the church today – “Has God really promised to prosper you and bless you?” Then he gives you many reasons why you should not believe it and in fact reject it. Have you bought into his lies too? If we are honest, we have all at one time or other done that and in fact may still be doing so now.

These thoughts that enter our minds are in fact hetero-suggestions from Satan. He may also use other preachers (who are also deceived), to reaffirm his suggestions to you. If God said it, we ought not to question it, especially when we lack understanding. We should never try to put a different spin on what is said so plainly in the Word of God.

### **The Power of An Assumed Major Premise**

Whatever major premise your conscious mind assumes to be true determines the conclusion your spirit comes to regarding any particular question or problem in your mind. If your premise is true, the conclusion must be true. If it is a wrong premise, you will find “facts” to substantiate your premise anyway and ignore or deny anything that contradicts it.

All natural things change and pass away; The flowers on your rose bush appear only for a season and then wither and die. Therefore, we know and understand that nothing lasts forever. Generally, all things ultimately decay. The first statement is referred to as the major premise, and the right conclusion must necessarily follow the right premise. The Apostle Paul often taught this way – he would assert a premise and then follow with “therefore”...



If your premise is that God's will is the reason why things don't work out in your life as you hoped or prayed for, then it would mean that it is not always God's will to heal despite the promises to heal you. If this is you, I can tell you that your life is characterized as a ship without a sail or rudder, just floating through life and trying to survive the sharks, the storms and the waves – being tossed to and fro. Sure, there will also be sunny calm days out at sea, and you may see dolphins. But you have no idea what is coming next. You feel helpless despite the fact you love the Lord and trust Him because you believe that no matter what happens it must be God's will for your life, so you are constantly in survival mode praying for strength to somehow get through all the adversities. Sadly, that is how many Christians live because of the major premise they assume as true. I hope to clearly show you that this is a false premise, as you continue to read this book.

### **The Spirit Does Not Argue**

Your spirit does not argue with you or talk back to you. It does not say, "You must not impress me with that." For example, when you say, "I can't do this." "I am too old now." "I can't meet this obligation." "I was born on the wrong side of the tracks." "I don't know the right politician," you are impregnating your spirit with these negative thoughts, and it responds accordingly. You are blocking your own good, thereby bringing lack, limitation, and frustration into your life.

When you set up obstacles, impediments, and delays in your conscious mind, you are denying the wisdom and intelligence resident in your spirit, placed there by God. You are saying in effect that your spirit cannot solve your problem. This leads to mental and emotional congestion, followed by sickness and neurotic tendencies.

To realize your desire and overcome your frustration, affirm boldly and with as much conviction as you can muster several times a day:

"God created me and His purpose for me is health, prosperity, peace, joy and all good things. Through my spirit, I receive guidance and provision. Through my spirit, I see the answer and the result I desire. What I feel and claim within my spirit will be expressed without. I am at peace knowing it will be done"

If you say, "There is no way out; I am lost; there is no way out of this dilemma", you will get a negative answer or response from your spirit, causing your experience to line up with what you said. Let me also remind you that the re-training of our minds is a constant battle. We are always bombarded with anxiety, doubt, uncertainty and fear, depending on the trouble facing us. But we **MUST** fight them or else they will overwhelm us, and we will suffer loss.

If you want your spirit to work for you, give it the right request, and attain its cooperation. By aligning it with the Word of God (renewing it), you will begin to experience all the wonderful things promised. It is no surprise that the spirit of man is often referred to as the heart in scripture because “*from it flow all the issues of life*” *Proverbs 4:23*. But it can either help or hurt you depending on what it is programmed with. Your spirit has a mind of its own, but it is influenced by your patterns of thought emotions and imagery. When you are seeking an answer to a problem, your spirit will respond, but it expects you to come to a decision and to make a definitive decision in your conscious mind. You must acknowledge the answer is in your spirit. However, if you say, “I don’t think there is any way out; I am all mixed up and confused; why don’t I get an answer?” you are neutralizing your spirit. Like the soldier marking time, you do not get anywhere.

Still the wheels of your mind, relax, and let composure, determination and clarity of what you desire take a hold of your imagination, your emotions and your thoughts. Then move forward and decide on the outcome you want and expect. You were created to be an over-comer not a failure. Yes, this world is a harsh place at times, but you can overcome anything you may face through faith.

## **CHAPTER 3**

### **The Power of Your Spirit**

The power of your spirit is enormous. It can inspire you, guide you, and reveal to you names, facts, and scenes from the storehouse of memory. This is why human memory has no limitations relative to brain size. Your spirit knows the answer to all problems. It is coded into the DNA of your spirit. But it is useless unless activated through faith.

Your spirit never sleeps, never rests. It is always on the job. You can discover the miracle working power of your spirit by plainly stating to your spirit prior to sleep, during prayer or a time when you can focus without distraction, that you want a certain specific thing accomplished. You will be delighted to discover that forces within you will be released, leading to the desired result. Here, then, is a source of power and wisdom which places you in touch with omnipotence or the power that moves the world, guides the planets in their course, and causes the sun to shine, God himself.

Understanding this is life changing and will open your eyes to the fact that we humans were created in God's image and did not evolve from some primitive life form. It is this aspect of our humanity that sets us clearly apart from the animal kingdom. The theory of evolution is in fact a cleverly designed propaganda to keep us in a place of weakness, failure and confusion. If we are merely evolved animals, then we have no more power over our destiny than a slug.

In 1855 Dr. James Esdaille, a Scottish surgeon, worked in Bengal before the discovery of ether or other modern methods of anaesthesia. Between 1843 and 1846, Dr. Esdaille performed about four hundred major operations of all kinds, such as amputations, removal of tumours and cancerous growths, as well as operations on the eye, ear, and throat. All operations were conducted under mental anaesthesia only. The postoperative mortality rate of patients operated on by Dr. Esdaille was extremely low, around two or three percent. Patients felt no pain, and there were no deaths during the operations.

Dr. Esdaille suggested to the minds of all his patients, whom he had put into a hypnotic state, that no infection or septic condition would develop. You must remember that this was before Louis Pasteur, Joseph Lister, and others pointed out the bacterial origin of disease and causes of infection due to unsterilized instruments and virulent organisms. The reason for the low mortality rate and the general absence of infection, which was reduced to a minimum, was undoubtedly due to the suggestions of Dr. Esdaille to the spirit of his patients. They responded according to the nature of his suggestion which totally overrode

the effect of actual germs. This clearly demonstrates that the spirit rules over the physical.

It is simply amazing, when you conceive how a surgeon, over one hundred and seventy years ago, discovered the miraculous wonder-working powers of the spirit. Isn't it amazing that God created you and I with the same amazing power? Consider its capacity to render you free from all pain and suffering, and its capacity to get the answer to all problems, be they what they may. All these things clearly demonstrate that there is a power and intelligence within you that far transcends your intellect, and over-rides the material world around you. This power, bestowed on mankind by our supreme creator, is awesome in power and available to all people regardless of education, age, gender or status. It is not relegated only to people of certain religious persuasion either, though religious views that deny God and the power of the spirit will miss out on their birthright not having understood the things of the spirit.

### **Your Conscious Mind Writes Your Book of Life**

Whatever thoughts, beliefs, opinions, theories, or dogmas you write, engrave, or impress on your spirit, you shall experience them as the objective manifestation of circumstances, conditions, and events. What you write on the inside, you will experience on the outside. You have two sides to your life, objective and subjective, visible and invisible, thought and its manifestation.

Your brain receives your thought, which is the organ of your conscious reasoning mind. When your conscious or objective mind accepts the thought completely, it is sent to your spirit or heart, called the brain of your mind (that other part of your mind), where it becomes flesh and is made manifest in your experience. As previously outlined, your spirit does not argue. It acts only from what you write on it. It accepts your verdict or the conclusions of your conscious mind as final. This is why you are always writing on the book of life, because your thoughts become your experiences. The American essayist, Ralph Waldo Emerson said, "Man is what he thinks all day long." He likely got that from the Bible which says, "*As a man thinks, so is he*" Proverbs 23:7

### **What Is Impressed In The Spirit Is Expressed.**

William James, the father of American psychology, said that the power to move the world is in your spirit. Your spirit is one with the infinite Spirit of God and His boundless wisdom. Whatever you impress upon your spirit, the latter will move heaven and earth to bring it to pass. He also said, "Success or failure depends more upon attitude than upon capacity". Successful men act as though they have accomplished or are enjoying something. Soon it becomes a reality. Act, look, feel successful, conduct yourself accordingly, and you will be amazed at the positive results.

Zig Ziglar often encouraged people to act what they wanted to be BEFORE feeling or experiencing it. In other words, "Fake it until you make it". He said, "act enthusiastic, and you will soon feel enthusiastic". It is the determination we make to act as we wish to be, that generates not only the emotions, but also brings about the embodiment of that which is acted upon and believed. You must, therefore, impress your spirit with right ideas and constructive thoughts with appropriate actions. The reason there is so much chaos and misery in the world is because people do not understand the interaction of their conscious mind, body and spirit. There is no sickness or discord when the conscious mind and spirit work together harmoniously.

Whatever is impressed in your spirit is expressed on the screen of space. This same truth was proclaimed by Buddha, Zoroaster, Lao-tze, and many illumined seers and prophets of the ages. Jesus himself proclaimed these same truths and demonstrated them during his short life on earth. I do not put Jesus in the same class as the enlightened ones however, because Jesus was able to overcome the power of death itself, which no man has been able to do before or since. For this reason, I must conclude that He was indeed the son of God and the true embodiment of all that is the nature of God. Hence what He said I believe over-rides any other wisdom found in the wisest of men.

Whatever you feel as true subjectively is expressed as conditions, experiences, and events. As in heaven (the spirit realm), so on earth (the physical or natural realm). When His disciples asked to be taught how to pray, Jesus (among other things), said, "*Your kingdom come, your will be done on earth as it is in heaven*" *Matthew 6:9-11*. He also stated that "*the kingdom of God is within you*" *Luke 17:21*. When you grasp what this verse is saying, you will come to understand that here and now you have the power to live a life of blessing, fruitfulness and prosperity. All the resources of God have been deposited into your spirit, awaiting your decision to use it. But up to now you likely did not know it nor understand its implications. Understanding this should radically change your thinking which in turn will radically change your experiences.

If you think negatively, destructively, and viciously, these thoughts generate destructive emotions which must be expressed and find an outlet. These emotions, being of a negative nature, are frequently expressed as ulcers, heart trouble, failure, bad luck, tension, and anxieties. They also lead men to destructive behaviour resulting in all manner of criminal behaviour. What is your idea or feeling about yourself now? Every part of your being expresses that idea. Your vitality, body, financial status, friends, and social status represent a perfect reflection of the idea you have of yourself. This is the real meaning of what is impressed in your spirit, and which is expressed in all phases of your life.

We injure ourselves by the negative ideas, which we entertain. How often have you wounded yourself by getting angry, fearful, jealous, or vengeful? These are the poisons that enter your spirit. You were born with the tendency toward these negative attitudes, though in the beginning, man was not so created. The battlefield is truly in the mind. Joyce Meyer has written an impactful book entitled "the Battlefield of the Mind" which is truly where the battle is fought. Feed your spirit life-giving thoughts, and you will wipe out all the negative patterns lodged therein - lodged in your DNA. As you continue to do this, all the past will be wiped out and remembered no more.

Whatever you sow you will reap. Sow constructive positive thoughts with as much emotion and imagery as you can conjure up and you will reap in the natural world those things. Sow doubt, pessimism and fear or any other negative emotion or thought and you will reap an abundance of negative things in your life. Remember that one seed produces significantly more than just another seed. It is multiplied and so it is with what we sow into our spirit.

### **Other Spirits And Their Influence**

The Bible reveals that there are numerous spirits or spirit beings and indicates how they affect things. Spirits however are not just energy as some mistakenly believe. They are beings with personality just as surely as we differ as individuals in personality. The only difference is that they do not have a physical body. Man has spent billions of dollars searching for extra-terrestrial life somewhere out there in the universe over the last fifty years. But ancient writings reveal that the people of those generations were quite familiar with supernatural beings. The Bible calls them angels, we call them aliens and it appears there are many different types of angels with varying powers and responsibilities. Those evil spirits that most people are somewhat aware of are in fact also angels, albeit they have become corrupted and they have sworn allegiance to the prince of darkness, Lucifer or Satan as he is sometimes called. Angels have also at times appeared in the form of men. For example, 2 angels were sent to destroy Sodom and Gomorrah, but they seemed like ordinary men and the homosexual men in Sodom wanted to have sex with them. But generally, angels do their work in the unseen world.

God is a spirit being and He influences believers through His spirit known as the "Holy Spirit". This Holy Spirit was given to benefit believers in Jesus Christ to empower them as was first experienced on the Day of Pentecost after Jesus arose from the dead and went to heaven. This Holy Spirit when working with our spirit will supercharge our spirit and ability to do the impossible.

The Holy Spirit is all knowing, and all powerful and you would be wise to receive Him into your life. Although the Holy Spirit is the agent causing regeneration of those who do not know Christ as their Saviour, His ongoing power and guidance are only experienced subsequently when we experience His

coming upon us in a unique way as experienced in the early church and continues to this day. This experience is often referred to as the “Baptism (complete immersion) of the Holy Spirit”.

Then we see that all angels – good and evil, are spirits. These spirit beings have influence over natural things in our world and can influence our thinking. In the story of Job, we see that Satan had power over the weather which he used to destroy Job’s possessions. Satan, being an angel is the chief of the fallen spirits. It is evident that these spirits can infiltrate humans to influence them. We see often that Jesus commanded these evil spirits to depart (come out of), those individuals they inhabited in His day. People inhabited by them had supernatural abilities in some cases and in others were mentally tormented by them. Many mentally ill people are influenced by these spirits and the only way to healing and freedom is the evicting of these unwelcome tenants. I have personally had many encounters with these beings who have inhabited people.

I have seen and experienced some rather weird and even frightening things as they have manifested their presence through those who were inhabited by them. One British man I knew, when taken control of against his will by one of the spirits (demons), began to speak perfect German to the minister who confronted him – because the minister was German and hence fully understood what the demon was saying. That man himself did not know a word of German.

On another occasion I was praying for a young lady who was inhabited by evil spirits and when I commanded the chief spirit to reveal itself, her voice suddenly changed to a man’s voice and began to sneer at me and ridicule me. Its personality was unlike others I had confronted though. It was very religious and pious. But when I insisted it leave and go to the bottomless pit (jail for spirits), it suddenly started begging me to stop and through the young lady began to weep. It said, “Please don’t send me there. You have no idea what its like. I will leave and go anywhere but there. Please don’t send me there.” When evicted it left cursing me.

Yes, these spirits have their own personalities and are real beings. They inhabit people in order to control them and use them for evil. In our modern world we have little understanding of these things and we attribute bizarre behaviour to simply mental illness. Psychologists often diagnose them as having split personalities and the voices speaking to them inciting them to evil is just called schizophrenia though there is no understanding as to why their behaviour is usually evil and the voices tell them to kill, rape or hurt others – never to do good. Modern mental practitioners cannot explain why there is always a bent to evil and their treatments often include drugs and various counselling therapies. Yet few know that these people need to be set free from the control of one or more evil spirits, resulting in immediate healing.

How these spirits take control of people varies, but in all cases, it often begins with the person believing the lies spoken into their minds by these spirits. This is why it is imperative to know the truth, because if you don't you will be easily deceived and could become a victim of these "spiritual viruses".

### **How Your Spirit Controls Your Body**

An example of how the body becomes conditioned to our belief is as follows. When I first went to school, I was faced with kids in the higher grades who took pleasure in catching the kindergarten kids and tickling them mercilessly until they sobbed or could not breathe or worse yet peed themselves. I determined that they would not have any effect on me by telling myself and them that I was not ticklish. Of course, they did not believe me and proceeded to do to me what they had done to all the other kindergarten kids. It took everything in me to resist feeling ticklish (though I did) and I endured their attempts by not trying to protect myself or react. It did not take long before they abandoned their efforts to tickle me concluding that perhaps I was not ticklish after all. To this very day, I am in fact not ticklish. My children hated it because I could tickle them, but they could not tickle me.

On another occasion in high school I went to another city on a school bus to play rugby. On the way back, we found out that the seniors practised a rather disgusting form of initiation. One by one, they called us juniors to the back of the bus where they were stripped naked, and their privates, polished with black boot polish. Some were even made to stand naked in the middle of the bus for a period of time to humiliate them. I determined that they would not do that to me so when they called me, I simply responded by saying no. They threatened to come get me and that if they did I would be severely punished. To this I responded – just try it. There are more of us juniors here than you guys so whoever of you dares come up here be prepared to suffer yourselves. I said it with such conviction that they completely backed off and stopped calling anyone else on that trip. Weeks later I learned that word got to the Principle about the incident and from that day forward the practice was not only banned but strictly enforced. This determination I felt and displayed is what faith is all about. It determines the outcome in advance.

### **Faith Restores Atrophied Optic Nerves**

There is the well-known, case of Madame Bire of France, recorded in the archives of the medical department of Lourdes, France. She was blind; the optic nerves were atrophied and useless. She visited Lourdes and had a miraculous healing. Ruth Cranston, a Protestant lady who investigated and wrote about healings at Lourdes in McCall's magazine, November, 1955, writes about Madame Bire as follows: "At Lourdes she regained her sight incredibly, with the optic nerves still lifeless and useless, as several doctors could testify after repeated examinations. A month later, upon re-examination, it was found that



the seeing mechanism had been restored to normal. But at first, so far as medical examination could tell, she was seeing with ‘dead eyes.’”

There is no doubt that healings take place at many shrines throughout the world, Christian and non-Christian alike. This does not confirm that the religious views of that group are correct excepting that through belief people receive miracles. It is the principle of faith taught and illustrated by Jesus and His disciples that is the real power to do the impossible. This is the law of the spirit and is as reliable as the law of gravity. An example is found in the story of the lame man Jesus found at the pool of Bethesda. It was believed that an angel appeared only once a year to stir the waters and when this occurred the first person into the water would be healed. How this belief came about is not told us. But Jesus healed the lame man without the need of an angel proving that it is faith that heals and not some outside influence. Jesus reiterated this many times when he proclaimed, "your faith has made you whole".

The waters of the shrine did not heal Madame Bire, to whom we just referred, but by her own spirit, which responded to her belief. The healing principle within her spirit responded to the nature of her thought and belief. Belief is an entrenched thought in the spirit. It means to accept something as true, but more than that it is a deep conviction. The thought accepted executes itself automatically. Undoubtedly, Madame Bire went to the shrine with expectancy and great faith, knowing in her heart (her spirit) she would receive a healing. Her spirit responded accordingly, releasing the ever-present healing forces God placed within her spirit. The Catholic church claims they have documented over 7000 miracles at the shrine.

### **Faith Restores Reproductive Problems**

The following is a story that is both inspiring and life changing if you will grasp its principles and apply them to whatever obstacle you are facing, and it illustrates so clearly the principles I have been teaching you about what faith is and how it works.

"After several beautiful years of marriage my wife and I received news from our Doctor that no married couple wants to hear. We were told that it would be a medical impossibility to have children! At first, we were in tears about the situation. Once we made it through the initial shock, the tears were replaced with uncertainty and hopelessness. My wife and I met each other working with youth as Youth Pastors, and once we decided marriage was in our future, the thought of having our own kids was both exciting and expected. What our doctors told us regarding our inability to have kids was not something we ever expected to hear. After the initial announcement accompanied by a multitude of emotions flooding our minds, we decided to do what we know best, take it to the great Physician.

The Bible tells us in *Hebrews 11:1*, “Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.” It also tells us in *Hebrews 11:6*, “But without faith it is impossible to please Him, for he who comes to God must believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who diligently seek Him” These scriptures became fuel for our belief that God’s Word is more powerful than man’s medical outcomes. Armed with this knowledge my wife and I decided to do the following: Pray every morning, holding hands and agreeing that God will bless us with three children. We called each of their names out in prayer everyday for two years-Darrell Jr. Sophia Olivia and Alexander Joshua. We also took hold of the scripture in *Numbers 23:19*, “God is not a man, that he should lie; neither the son of man, that he should repent: has He said, and shall He not do it? or has He spoken, and shall He not make it good?” With this in mind, we were convinced that our firstborn would be our son Darrell Jr. Our faith was so strong that we proceeded to set up a baby room in our home-for a little boy. Some of our family members thought that we had lost our minds. We thought that this was a good sign we were doing the will of God. With room in place and faith abounding, we continued to pray for another year. Nothing was happening in the natural, but we were convinced that things were starting to take place in the spirit. Our faith was fully engaged.

To make a long story short, today I am the proud father of four beautiful children, my oldest Darrell Jr., my second Sophia Olivia and my baby boy Alexander Joshua. God decided to throw a cherry on top and allowed us to recently adopt our youngest, 20-month-old Abigail Jubilee. Brothers and sisters in Christ, this experience taught me that if we do it God’s way, our faith has the ability to move mountains. This spiritual truth pertains to all aspects of our Christian experience be it parenting, business and industry, ministry and any other call God has on our lives. I pray the testimony of our family’s greatest miracle to date can encourage you to believe that through Christ, all things are possible."

Once again, this story illustrates that it is belief achieved through the conscious re-programming of the spirit, that makes miracles possible. Real faith takes action and they put actions to their faith – acting as though it was real despite everything saying it was not possible. I pray that their story will inspire others facing a similar problem to believe God and take action in faith.

When I went to Bible School in Canada, my second semester I did not have any money for tuition or residency. My brother who was married with 2 young boys rented a house nearby and offered me a room to stay for the second semester so that took care of where I would live, and he took on the responsibility of also feeding me. But that still left tuition. On the first day of school an announcement was made over the speaker system at the end of morning classes that those who had not paid their fees needed to go and see the registrar during lunch and take care of it.

I went home for lunch not knowing what to do. Then I determined that if God already provided for me to get there, He obviously will take care of the rest. I checked my pockets and I had exactly 2 cents – that was it. So, after lunch I announced to my brother and his wife that I was going to pay my school fees. Surprised my brother said, “with what?” I took out the 2 cents from my pocket and facetiously said “with 2 cents”. My first thought was maybe there was some money in the mail for me from someone. But that day I did not even have mail. So, I said, “well God this is your problem not mine” and confidently walked to the registrar’s office without any idea what I would even say when I got there. As I grabbed the doorknob on the office door, I heard a voice yelling at me, “Ken wait up”. I turned to see a fellow student running towards me and wondered if something was wrong. As he approached me, he reached out his hand to me which was held in a clenched fist. I opened my hand and he deposited a bunch of money into my hand. Totally surprised, I said what is this about? He said, well I was praying over lunch (something he didn’t normally do), and he said I got this overwhelming sense that I needed to give you this money. I thanked him and proceeded to the office. When I got there, the room was rather crowded with other students. By the time the registrar got to me lunch was almost over. She said to me, now that you are off campus, I have not figured out yet what you owe us. I asked her if I could give her some money today and she accepted and gave me a receipt. I headed straight to class where my brother was waiting for me. He asked, “so how did things go?” So, I told him, and he was blown away. I personally was not too surprised though because I was totally convinced God would provide what I needed.

Four days later I got a message from the registrar that she had figured out how much I still owed, and could I come in at lunch time to see her. So once again I went to the office but this time, I was the only one there. She proceeded to tell me that I still owed exactly one hundred dollars. I did not have any more money. But before I could even respond to her, my brother came into the office and interrupted by asking how much I still owed. I told him one hundred dollars and he handed me a one-hundred-dollar bill. I was in shock. I knew he was broke, and that was all the money he had to buy food. So, I paid my fees in full and just as we turned around to leave, the registrar called him back. “Hey Peter”, she said, “I almost forgot, someone left an envelope here for you this morning”. As we left the office, he opened it and there was nothing inside excepting a one-hundred-dollar bill. It turned out God had been prompting my brother to give his last one hundred dollars to me and although he was terrified and tried to fight the feeling, he finally gave in and did it, only to see that God is faithful when we completely trust Him even with our last hundred dollars. God saw to it that he immediately got it back and we both left amazed and thankful. Does faith work? You bet it does – every time.

## CHAPTER 4

### What Do You Believe?

We are going now to look at what the Bible teaches us about faith. Faith as we will see is not a mere mental acknowledgement of a fact or truth but an absolute conviction of something not yet seen. So, what is the difference? Conviction is the state of belief that would cause you to bet everything you own on the outcome or your life itself. There is not the slightest ounce of doubt. Impossible? Only if you believe it is..

#### Faith Verses Deeds

For centuries religious people have debated whether God is honoured by faith alone or is it by our deeds. Often the two schools of thought are referred to as Calvinism or Armenianism, the former being by faith alone and the latter by works. People who favour works are often referred to as legalists because they emphasize living by the law as well as many of their own man-made laws as evidenced in many religious sects today. The Apostle Paul appears to have had many a conflict himself with believers in his day. Those of the Jewish sect were said to be legalists and followed closely the law, while followers of Paul's teachings focused on grace and salvation by faith alone. Yet some of Paul's followers fell into extreme grace believing that they could do whatever they pleased and yet were still saved and of the faith. Paul himself had to write letters to the Corinthian and Roman churches to correct that error.

It also appears from scripture for example that men will one day be judged by their deeds, even giving an account for every idle word spoken. *Matthew 12:36*; yet we see what appears to be a contradiction where Abraham believed God and as a result God attributed righteousness to him for it. *Genesis 15:6 & Galatians 3:6*. The differing views have caused great contention between religious groups and do so still to this day. So, who is right? Or is there in fact a contradiction in the Bible?

I have personally been indoctrinated in my youth by both opposing views so can with some authority speak to the matter. In my opinion, both are correct. Wait a minute you say, how can they both be correct? Well I believe the answer lies in the writings of James, the brother of Jesus when he said, *"<sup>14</sup> What good is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith but does not have works? Can that faith save him?<sup>15</sup> If a brother or sister is poorly clothed and lacking in daily food, <sup>16</sup> and one of you says to them, "Go in peace, be warmed and filled," without giving them the things needed for the body, what good is that? <sup>17</sup> So also faith by itself, if it does not have works, is dead. <sup>18</sup> But someone will say, "You have faith and I have works." Show me your faith apart from your works, and I will show you my faith by my works. <sup>19</sup> You believe that God is one; you do well. Even the demons believe—and shudder! <sup>20</sup> Do you want to be shown, you foolish person,*

*that faith apart from works is useless? <sup>21</sup> Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered up his son Isaac on the altar? <sup>22</sup> You see that faith was active along with his works, and faith was completed by his works”, James 2:14-22 (ESV)*

From the above argument it becomes rather clear that faith and works are 2 halves of a whole, or two sides of the same coin, perhaps in the same way that God is love and yet at the same time a righteous judge. If you really do have faith, then works of faith will be evident in your life. In other words, the fallacy that one can have faith in Jesus Christ yet still live like the devil are mutually incongruent. People of real faith always demonstrate it by how they live and by what they do.

Benjamin Franklin, one of the founding fathers of America was a proponent that if faith does not move someone to better themselves and in particular their fellow man then, their faith is useless. Having grown up in the time of the Puritan movement, and the enlightenment period that followed emphasizing grace, Benjamin in a way rejected both extremes in favour of practical living and believed God was most honoured when men used their best abilities and efforts to help their fellow man, rather than just obey a set of rules. Hence, he became a proponent of religious tolerance and did not take sides in the religious fervour of the time. His view was that if what you believe helped you be a better person and be a better neighbour then it was good, and in the end, God would judge all men solely by their deeds.

In contrast however, we see the religious sect of Jesus’ day called the Pharisees who tirelessly opposed Jesus and sought to kill him, accusing him of heresy – despite the miraculous and kind deeds He did. Pharisees generally were strict observers of the law, yet Jesus accused them of being “white-washed tombstones”. Outwardly they looked good, but their heart and motives were wrong. Again, we see the fault of focusing strictly on one side of the coin. There has to be an equal balance of faith and action, and as previously stated in this book, “Real faith always takes action – it is not lazy or apathetic; It does not hope or engage in wishful thinking but puts into action every effort to accomplish that which is believed.”

### **What the Bible Says About Faith.**

*2 Cor. 5:7 - For we walk by faith and not by sight.* This is what the Apostle Paul wrote to the people in Corinth. The simplicity of this statement clearly demonstrates that faith is indeed blind. Blind to the natural senses or understanding of the natural minded man. But faith sees that which does not yet exist and is convinced of its reality even though it has not appeared in the natural realm yet.

Faith is - unquestioning acceptance of a truth regardless of understanding how, past or present experience or natural proof - from our five natural senses. It precedes proof but fully expects proof and will not accept anything less, since it is already convinced of its reality. Faith is like a bulldog - it never lets go. But it has little need to see natural proof because it is already in the spirit a reality so when it manifests in the natural it is no surprise. In fact, it was fully expected. Smith Wigglesworth, a notable minister in the eighteenth century, performed many amazing healings. He was so convinced that he seldom took the time to even wait for the manifestation but would simply move on and pray for the next person needing healing. He saw them healed before he even said amen.

Years ago, my wife and I decided to buy a brand-new bicycle for our son for his birthday. It was certainly a "big gift" (because we had 7 children and I am sure you can imagine how costly it is to provide for 7 children). However, we were sure he would be blown away, especially since he had not even asked for one. None of our other children ever got a new bicycle. The morning of his birthday we were so excited to see his response. But we were shocked when we unveiled this amazing gift that he did not seem overly surprised. Feeling somewhat disappointed we asked him why he was not surprised by this gift, to which he replied, "well I knew I would get one since I prayed and asked God for a new bicycle". No wonder we are encouraged in the Bible to have faith like a little child. A child doesn't reason, they simply accept.

### **Faith Is Not A Feeling**

Feelings can be deceptive and very transient, depending on your circumstances or health. But faith is a deep-seated conviction of the present reality of that which is hoped for. We begin in hope, but hope must turn to faith to get results. Hope is for the most part possibility thinking, but usually puts the responsibility on something or someone else to fulfill that which is desired. Many people who claim to have faith in fact only have hope and hope unfortunately produces no miracles.

Faith too may be in a person or something, but the difference is that there is no doubt of the outcome or answer expected, whereas hope finds itself dependent on the will or influence of another or a changed circumstance and uncertain of the answer or outcome. Hope can easily be shattered by circumstance or when opposition comes, but faith stands strong and resolute no matter what the current conditions may be.

*And ALL THINGS, whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, YOU WILL receive. Matthew. 21:22.* Notice the certainty of this statement. It was Jesus Himself that said it, so why is it that we doubt? Jesus never hesitated or doubted when confronted with any challenge and thus showed us what faith really looks like. By the way it is important here to recognize that even though Jesus was the son of God and He had faith that could move mountains, He still faced many

adversities. People who say that if you have faith you will never face adversity are not telling you the truth. But, by faith, as Jesus did, we can overcome all those adversities. All things are possible to those who believe - Decide today, right now to move from hope to faith and miracles will happen for you too.

### **The Steps Down to Disbelief**

#### **Ignorance - not aware of the truth.**

The saying “ignorance is bliss” in this case certainly does not apply. What you don’t know about the power of faith or belief can and will hurt you. After reading this book, you will no longer be ignorant and therefore enabled to live a rich and fulfilled life, if you choose to believe and act on it.

#### **Doubt**

This is the stage when you begin to doubt whether or not what you have prayed for and believed for will actually happen. At this stage, you are still hopeful but at the same time uncertain. You are not sure of the outcome. You tend to vacillate between believing and doubting like the crashing waves on a beach spoken of in the first chapter of the book of James. James says that in that mental condition we will receive nothing from God. *James 1:7*

#### **Unbelief**

The dictionary definition is “incredulity, or skepticism especially in matters of religious faith”. You consider arguments against what you believe. At this stage you have given up on faith, your miracle or God and begin to look for alternative answers – God allows sickness for a reason, or maybe its not His time or maybe God knows it won’t be good for me, or maybe it's not God’s will. Some may even conclude that the Bible is a lie and Jesus is a liar. This results in a new set of beliefs because you appear to have failed in your previous beliefs. At this point you are ninety nine percent convinced that what you hoped for or believed will never happen.

#### **Disbelief** - A deliberate choice to not believe - after hearing "the facts"

This is the state of someone who says, “don’t confuse me with the facts because my mind is already made up”. When believing the truth means you must change or give up your pet dogmas or when your ego will be hurt by it, you will resort to disbelief. You really don’t want to believe it because you don’t understand it or don’t like its implications in your life.

The worst form of cancer is not what some suppose. It is the cancer called "unbelief" - skepticism. It is this insidious mental state that robs us of anything miraculous and subjects us to all kinds of failure, sickness and evil experiences.

Here is an example of the progression of disbelief for someone with physical cancer.

Stage 1. Does not know that God's Word promises healing and that healing is for all who will believe and that it was part of what Jesus died for. You hope He will heal you and ask for people to pray for you.

Stage 2. Doubting God's willingness to work: "We've been praying for a couple of weeks now and I don't feel any better. I don't think it's working. Maybe I should get someone with more faith to pray for me." Maybe I should get radiation or chemo treatments or perhaps embark on a special diet to combat the cancer.

Stage 3. Reconsidering whether something can or will occur and substituting another belief in its place; skepticism: "I don't think it's going to happen. I keep praying but it does no good. Maybe it's not God's will to heal me". If the chemo doesn't work, I am done for. Obviously, God doesn't care or is unwilling to heal me.

Stage 4. Conscious disbelief or apathy: "Look--God is not going to heal me! I wish He would, but it's obvious He isn't, and I don't want to hear any more about it! I refuse to get my hopes up for something that just isn't going to happen! If He wants to heal me, He can go ahead and do it, but I don't believe He will!"

The following is a Bible story example of unbelief and its consequences.

The story is framed at a time when Samaria had been surrounded by a massive army. It resulted in the worst suffering those people had ever experienced - no food and little water. In fact, it was so bad that we are told that some people were in fact eating their own children (who likely died of starvation). I know that makes me sick to my stomach too. I think I would rather starve to death myself. But a man of God (a prophet), living under the same conditions, made a startling prediction that by the next day grain would be in abundance and cheap. Below is the response of a government official who heard his prediction.

*2 Kings 7:1-19-20. The officer had said to the man of God, "Look, even if the LORD should open the floodgates of the heavens, could this happen?" (he was skeptical – which is unbelief) The man of God had replied, "You will see it with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it!" And that is exactly what happened to him, for the people trampled him in the gateway, and he died.*

According to the Bible we observe the following;

- Unbelief (cynicism/skepticism) is sin
- Unbelief is the mother of all sins. This is the only sin that will send men to Hell and rob them of all the blessings of God. The temptation of Eve in the garden of Eden was to doubt what God said and question His motives. That is unbelief.

**Unbelief Has Been Severely Punished**



By faith Noah escaped from the flood. By unbelief the rest were drowned. Unbelief kept the Israelites out of Canaan. When they heard about the giants in the land and the fortified cities, they doubted they could take the land and became fearful. They disbelieved God's promise to give them the land and all the inhabitants, and therefore the punishment came upon them, that they should not inherit that good land, for which they had endured much in their journey from Egypt. Only two of the spies believed and gave a good report. As it turned out, they were the only two of the original Jews who left Egypt that entered the land. Their names were Joshua and Caleb. The Bible clearly states the reason the rest of the Israelites never entered - *"They could not enter because of their unbelief"* Hebrews 3:19. If they had tried while being doubtful, they would have all been slaughtered because they would have gone in fearful. God knew that, and in His mercy prevented them from entering.

### **God Hates Unbelief**

God has dealt hard blows upon it: and God will ultimately crush it. Unbelief dishonours God. Unbelief aims a blow at His divinity, denies His goodness, disregards His attributes, maligns His character; and contradicts His Word, therefore, God of all things, hates first and chiefly, unbelief, wherever it is.

### **The Faces of Unbelief**

*"Whatsoever is not of faith is sin," Romans 14:23*

### **False Humility (Sin)**

Unbelief sometimes comes dressed up as an angel of light. It calls itself humility, and it says, "I should not be presumptuous" Who am I that I should expect God to do that for me? After all, I am nothing and God knows what is best for me (fatalism). False humility like this is just disguised unbelief. This is tragic and is found to be rampant in many churches today. Many honestly believe that we should just accept every circumstance and situation as God's Will even when our experience is contrary to God's promises and character. This breeds confusion and a myriad of false doctrines emerge as a result.

My dear beloved father-in-law developed Parkinson's disease and many people prayed for his healing. Some strangers even approached him to say they believed God wanted to heal him as did his wife. Yet, because of his religious upbringing he did not feel right that he should be healed when so many others were suffering worse things and dying, so he merely accepted it as the cross he must bear, or perhaps it was God's will to teach him something. He accepted it as from God. This resulted in him suffering with that disease until he died.

Joel Olsteen tells of his grandmother who was diagnosed with Parkinson's disease. Her response was remarkably different than my father-in-law. She said to the doctor, I have no such ailment and will not take any medications for

something I don't have. She firmly believed the scripture that says, "*By His stripes you were healed*" 1 Peter 2:24. She never did develop Parkinson's and lived another healthy 15 years after that diagnosis.

Make no mistake, we will face trials and tribulations, but it is through faith we overcome them and are supposed to overcome them not accept them. The cross we are to bear is not sickness nor poverty, but persecution for our faith. Nowhere are we taught to accept them or learn to live with them, while foolishly claiming that it is our cross, we must bear. This is not what Jesus referred to when he told us to take up His cross and follow Him. Jesus was never sick, nor did he suffer want, excepting on purpose like when he fasted for 40 days. When facing death Jesus said, "*No man takes my life from me, but I lay it down of my own choice*". John 10:18. Jesus also told his disciples that *if He wanted to, He could ask His Father for help and He would send ten thousand angels to rescue Him.* Matthew 26:53. Jesus' suffering was not something that came on Him and over which He had no control.

### **Human Reasoning (Supposed Common Sense) (Sin)**

How can that be? Forget about miracles. You need to eat well, exercise, take your medication and do what your doctor tells you to do. You need to get a good job, work hard and be very frugal with your money. Many professing Christians have faith to believe for eternal life but that is where it ends. They have no faith for anything else - they have become "unbelieving believers" If it's humanly possible then there is no need for faith. When we rely on the flesh, we reap what the flesh can produce, but God does not operate that way. So many can pray that the Lord guides the hands of the physician, but few believe for complete healing without the need of a physician.

As we have already learned, when your conscious mind tries to figure things out or rationalize things, there can be no faith and no miracles. The Bible says, "*Trust in the Lord with all your heart (spirit) and do not lean on your own understanding.*" Proverbs 3:5 This verse clearly indicates that human understanding will thwart faith and that will result in nothing good ever happening. An undisciplined mind like this is actually rooted in unbelief - we can't see how its possible, so doubt fills our hearts. But it is our spirit that knows how and not our rational or conscious mind. Choosing to trust and believe when it seems impossible and makes no sense is what we are called to do if we are to live a life rich with all God's blessings.

### **Judging God as Unfaithful or That His Words Are Not True (Sin)**

As we looked at earlier in the steps to disbelief, when someone is doubting that what the Bible promises is true, they are in unbelief. Israel was in this state of mind when the spies went in to view the promised land. It resulted in them losing out and spending forty years in the desert instead. If your life appears to

be like living in a desert could it be because of your unbelief? Remember that it was clearly God's will for Israel to enter and take possession of the promised land. Yet, they did not. Was it God that failed? Absolutely not!! They could no more blame God for not entering in, than you can blame God for your current bad circumstances. It's time we grew up and took responsibility for our own experiences. This story also clearly debunks the belief that God's will is always fulfilled. It is only fulfilled when we act in faith. "*... that you might prove what is the perfect and acceptable will of God.*" *Romans 12:2*

To entertain any notion that God is not faithful or that His Word cannot be relied upon is to attack His very character and the consequences for doing so are severe. Yet many today, although they think they are better than those Israelites, are in the same frame of mind. They rationalize everything and because of previous disappointments and lack of understanding they choose not to "raise their hopes" in case they get disappointed again. Faith creates our experience and what we desire as we have already seen. We must therefore begin by declaring we believe the scriptures and all the promises, and God will do exactly what He said He will do. These blessings are not reserved to those who are pious, religious or perfect. They are for all who will simply dare to believe.

### **Fear Is Unbelief (Sin)**

Faith and fear cannot co-exist. You may start out in fear but as you proclaim God's promises and deny all other statements, feelings or external evidence and dare to believe, fear will vanish and, in its place will be a deep peace and sense of "it is done". Faith flourishes in the soil of peace and confidence, but fear or anxiety is like a raging flood that washes everything away.

Today it seems more than in any previous generation, we are plagued by fear and anxiety. There are more phobias today than ever, and people are driven to consulting doctors who often prescribe anti-depressants that cause more harm than good, or they turn to alcoholism or drugs to somehow calm their fears. The Bible speaks much about fear and encourages us to "fear not". But because fear is a feeling, we falsely assume that we cannot help it - we are just that way. This of course is untrue, and we can and ought to do something about it. We must overcome fear if we are going to have faith, and there is nothing impossible to those who have faith.

Fear also opens the door to all kinds of harm according to our imaginations. I know of a lady, who many years ago, was fearful a burglar was hiding under her bed. She was so convinced of it that she kept a baseball bat at her side in bed and every night would look under her bed to see if there was anyone there. After some time, what she feared happened. She looked under her bed and sure enough, there was a burglar hiding there. Her own thinking brought this into reality.

In the story of Job, we learn that in a single day, he lost all his possessions and all his children were killed. On top of that, he suddenly got very painful boils all over his body - most likely the result of the shock of what happened. However, something Job said was telling about what may have precipitated these events. He said, "that which I have greatly feared has come upon me". Why did God seemingly allow this to happen to Job? Could it be because Job himself caused it through fear? If not, then how can we really trust that God loves us and that no harm could come to us if we trust Him? I believe Job unwittingly gave Satan opportunity against him through fear.

### **Begging God Is Unbelief (Sin)**

So many Christians have gotten their "b" words mixed up. They have traded the word believing for begging. Jesus never once begged His Father for anything and neither did He instruct us to do so. In fact, we are told to "*come boldly before His throne of Grace*" *Hebrews 4:16*. Is there a difference between asking and begging? If so, what is begging or what is the profile of a beggar?

A beggar is someone first and foremost who believes they are helpless and therefore needing someone else to take care of them or help them. On many city streets today, we encounter beggars looking for a handout. Many feel helpless and hopeless requiring someone else to give to them what they need. As long as you are feeling helpless, you are in a state of being a beggar.

Contrary to what so many believe, it is not prideful or arrogant to do the works of God through the power He has already placed in your spirit. Waiting for and begging God to do it for you is not what Jesus demonstrated and taught. Of course, all these wonderful things come from Him and glorify Him. It is not we ourselves that created this magnificent power. But once we know about it, we are expected to exercise our faith and make things happen through our faith for good.

The Bible says, "*God has given to us, all things (we need), pertaining to life and godliness*" *2 Peter 1:3*. Notice the tense of this statement - "Has given". So, if He has given us everything we need, why is it then that we keep begging? Is it our wrong understanding of God's will and relationship with us? Is it because of false humility? If everything we need has been given to us, then where is it? I believe it is resident within our own spirit and we can draw from it anything and everything we need because it has already been given to us. There is no need to beg God. Ask once and then believe you have received what you asked for. Smith Wigglesworth whom we referred to earlier said that if you pray twice for the same thing you prayed the second time in unbelief. Faith asks, believes and then thanks God. Grow your faith daily by declaring and imagining your prayer being answered which will move your faith from your head to your heart. When it finally gets there, you will receive in this temporal world that which you envisioned, prayed for and believed.

## **Prayerlessness Is Unbelief (Sin)**

Why is it that we don't pray? Sometimes it may be because everything is going well, and we feel that we have nothing to pray about. But all too often it is because we do not believe that prayer will change anything. We prayed before and nothing happened, or things in fact got worse. Others have also prayed yet nothing happened so why bother? The reason this has been our experience I believe is that we or they did not really pray in faith. We simply prayed in hope as beggars.

But to not lay hold of God's promises is in fact sin because we are doubting God. To not pray and ask of Him is often because we really don't expect an answer to our prayer. There really is no point praying if you do not *"believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those who diligently seek Him"* Hebrews 11:6. There is only one prayer God will answer and that is the prayer of faith. All other prayers are merely vain repetition and words without life. And even worse is that it is just begging. Yet we tend to blame God for not answering or else we create a new theology of "well maybe it isn't God's will or His time".

## **Unbelief Disables a Man from Performing Any Good Work**

*"Without faith it is impossible to please God." Heb 11:6*

In the story of Jesus walking on water, we learn that Jesus invited Peter to come to Him walking on the water. By the way it was Peter's suggestion to Jesus – *"if you really are Jesus then command me to come on the water to you"* Matthew 14:28. At first, Peter did, but we are told that he started to look at the waves and the wind and immediately fear and doubt entered his mind and he began to sink immediately. Crying out to Jesus for help, Jesus lifted him up (which is His grace) and they went into the boat. Faith was Peter's life buoy; it kept him up; but unbelief sent him down like a lead brick. For faith to stay strong, we need to not even look at our circumstances or pay heed to any sickness or problem facing us. No, instead we are to focus strictly and deliberately on the outcome we desire. This is not however denial of current conditions but ignoring them. It is deliberately replacing our current thoughts and feelings or situation with a positive outcome. It is not passive but aggressive. Faith makes things to happen.

## **Is It God's Will?**

*1 John 5:14-15" And this is the confidence that we have in Him, that, if we ask any thing according to His will, He hears us: And if we know that He hears us, whatever we ask, we know that we have the petitions that we desired of Him."*

Many people try to explain away their failure to receive, by blaming it on the will of God, but only because they do not understand the will of God. This is the great "cover up" for our own lack of faith and nothing more as I will prove to you. Let's assume that Jesus did the "will of the Father" Is that a good

assumption? Yes, in fact Jesus himself claimed to do the will of the Father. So then, a look at what Jesus did should show us what the will of the Father is then right?

So, what did Jesus do?

He healed everyone who came to Him for healing.

He cast out evil spirits and healed those who were troubled by them.

He demonstrated God's grace and love through forgiveness.

He raised people from the dead.

He taught others (his disciples) to do as he did - heal the sick, raise the dead, feed the hungry, clothe the naked and preach the good news of salvation from sin and its consequences.

But more encompassing than these specific deeds there are two distinct things Jesus claimed He came to do.

1. To undo the works of the Devil. – *1 John 3:8*

2. To seek and to save that which was lost. *Luke 19:10*

EVERYTHING evil in this world is the work of the Devil. So, for us to overcome any and all adversity for ourselves and others, IS the will of the Father. One of the titles given to the Devil is "Adversary". From this word, we derive the word "adversity". So, Satan (the Devil), is the one behind all adversity. Again, the story of Job clearly demonstrates that. Every evil thing that came upon Job was the work of the Devil.

So, let's think for a moment at what things could be included in this list. How about poverty? More evil is caused in the world through poverty than wealth. Crime rates clearly demonstrate that in poor nations or neighbourhoods, crime is rampant. So why is it that some conclude that poverty is God's plan for our lives? That makes no sense whatsoever. In fact, let's look at creation itself. If you plant one corn seed what is the result? Several ears of corn each containing hundreds of seeds. God's way is the way of multiplication. It is abundance. This my friends IS the will of the Father so if that is not your experience then it is not God's fault (or will) but your own because of your own wrong thinking, belief and actions.

If you speak with most Christians about divine healing, you will very quickly find out that there are many who believe it is sometimes not God's will to heal. Yet when we consider the promises of God, it seems to contradict that. The primary reason for this false belief is the experiences of people who claimed to have faith yet never got healed. So instead of firmly placing our faith in God and His promises we judge God by people's experiences and due to our lack of understanding we become deceived.

Many assume that Jesus did not heal everybody, yet scripture clearly tells us that *“He healed them all”*. Luke 4:38. When Jesus healed the man at the pool of Bethesda, there were many other sick folks there. Because scripture does not tell us what happened with the rest of the sick there, we assume that Jesus only healed this man. Personally, knowing Jesus and His compassion and mission to undo ALL the works of the Devil, I believe that he would have healed everyone else there too. To assume He only healed this one man is a false assumption and thus a false notion about the will of God. Just because it is not recorded in the gospels does not mean it never happened. *“Jesus performed many other signs in the presence of His disciples, which are not written in this book.”* John 20:30

When Jesus took this lame man by the hand and told him to rise and walk, he evidently did not hesitate despite that it made no sense since he was obviously lame and could not do any such thing. But he put action to his faith, and it resulted in an instant healing.

To get a better understanding of how God’s will interacts with our will, let’s look for a moment at what the Bible calls salvation. Is it God’s will that everyone gets saved? The scripture says, *“God is not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to eternal life.”* 2 Peter 3:9. So does everyone get saved? No, they don’t. Why not? Because they do not all believe. Salvation therefore is not only the result of God’s will, but also man’s cooperation with that will by believing.

Why would Jesus who died to redeem us from every curse of sin want us any more to suffer the results of sin? That makes no sense. Was his death only so that we can have eternal life or was it much more than that? Jesus himself said that He had come to undo the works of the Devil, and as we have and will see, all adversity and suffering (sickness, poverty, premature death and more) is ultimately his works.

### **Is Faith Necessary to Operate Spiritual Gifts?**

*Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given to us: if prophecy, let us prophesy according to our faith.* Romans 12:6

The Old Testament contains some amazing stories about the activities of the prophets. One of the most notable was a prophet by the name of Elisha. Here is one story of what Elisha did;

*The wife of a man from the company of the prophets cried out to Elisha, “Your servant my husband is dead, and you know that he revered the LORD. But now his creditor is coming to take my two boys as his slaves.”*

Elisha replied to her, "How can I help you? Tell me, what do you have in your house?" "Your servant has nothing there at all," she said, "except a small jar of olive oil."

Elisha said, "Go around and ask all your neighbours for empty jars. Don't ask for just a few. Then go inside and shut the door behind you and your sons. Pour oil into all the jars, and as each is filled, put it to one side."

She left him and shut the door behind her and her sons. They brought the jars to her and she kept pouring. When all the jars were full, she said to her son, "Bring me another one." But he replied, "There is not a jar left." Then the oil stopped flowing.

She went and told the man of God, and he said, "Go, sell the oil and pay your debts. You and your sons can live on what is left." 2 Kings 4:1-7 (NIV translation)

Nowhere in this story are we told that Elisha prayed about the situation or asked God what He wanted to do. Instead we find him boldly offering his help in the situation – help that depended on a prophecy. Could you be that certain and that bold? That took faith on Elisha's part which resulted in a miracle of provision. It certainly was an interesting method employed but again methods are not the key – faith is. Also, this widow acted on what Elisha told her to do – in faith. Together a miracle occurred.

Let's now have a closer look at some of the promises given us in scripture.

*Matthew 7:7 Ask, and it will be given you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you:*

Note the positive use of the word "will" in this verse. There is absolutely no place for doubt here. So, if our experience is contrary, then is this a lie or have we ourselves made the promises of God of no effect through unbelief?

*For what if some did not believe? shall their unbelief make the faith of God without effect? God forbid yes, let God be true, but every man a liar...Romans 3:3,4*

*2 Corinthians 1:20 For ALL the promises of God in Him (Jesus) are YES, and in Him Amen, unto the glory of God through us. 2 Corinthians 1:20*

If "all" really does mean "all", then we can safely assume that what God has promised us is ALWAYS yes. So, where do we come up with this notion that maybe it's not God's will for us? That God rather intends to cause us suffering for some greater purpose? Also notice the last part of this verse - the fulfillment of His promises glorifies God, but it is "through us" His promises are made reality. So why are we waiting for God to do something when He has already answered with a "yes"? We do not receive simply because it is us who do not truly believe.



*He that spared not His own Son but delivered Him up for us all, how shall He not with Him also FREELY GIVE us ALL THINGS? Romans 8:32* Religious people somehow think that to receive the blessings and promises of God, one must be very holy or righteous. This is simply not the case, because it is about faith - not works. God gives all these wonderful blessings to us "Freely". He is the most generous of persons and far above any generous human who has ever lived. I also emphasized the words "All things". The reason is that again we tend to "spiritualize" everything and hence put limits on what can be prayed for or believed for. That is simply not the case. There are no limits. Can you believe that? You ought to, because God said it and He does not lie.

*Matthew 21:22 And ALL THINGS, whatever you shall ask in prayer, believing, YOU WILL receive.*

Once again, we see in this verse the terms "All things" and "You will". Can there really be any place for doubt or questioning here? Are there any restrictions mentioned here or caveats? Most certainly not! So, if God has promised this and given us a signed "blank cheque", why do we doubt? I have concluded that it is because we have not known nor understood faith. Nor have we fully grasped what Jesus did on the cross. He paid the price for sin – death. Death was the consequence of sin (and still is). The curses of sickness and suffering came through sin. If Jesus paid the price in full then it means that we no longer need to suffer the consequences for sin – not now and not in eternity. We have been robbed by the lies of Satan who has caused us to question God and doubt Him, as the serpent did many years ago in the Garden of Eden to Eve. If you ever begin to doubt that what you have prayed for will come to pass, you need to read this verse over and again and declare it out loud to be the truth - because it is.

*Mark 9:23 Jesus said to him, if you can believe, ALL THINGS ARE POSSIBLE to him that believes.*

"If you can believe". That is the issue and the problem we all face. It is not God's will that is the problem. It is not genetics or some other force of nature. No, it is most assuredly the battle of belief that we all face. Over and again through these verses we clearly see that God has in fact given us all a "blank signed cheque". We can fill in anything we choose, and if we will have unwavering faith, we will receive everything we have believed. There is no uncertainty of the outcome.

### **Faith and Authority**

*Matthew 28:18 Then Jesus came to them and said, "All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me.*

*Matthew 10:1 And when He had called His twelve disciples to Him, He gave them power (authority) over unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all kinds of sickness and all kinds of disease.*

In order to exercise authority over anyone or anything, one has to have been given that authority by another. If you have the authority for example to make decisions for a country, it is because the people voted you into power to exercise that authority on their behalf. On the other hand, if you are dictator it is because the military empowers you to do so. Many Christians are ignorant of the fact that they in fact have already been given authority over all kinds of diseases and sicknesses, over their own lives and over everything in this world.

The story is told of Jesus going to visit Peter's mother in law who was very sick and had a high fever. We are not told what precipitated the fever. Maybe it was malaria. In any case, it was irrelevant. Jesus "rebuked the fever". He spoke to it as though it were a living creature with ears and volition. The result was that the fever immediately left, and she was whole. Notice Jesus did not pray for her to be healed. Like he taught about commanding a mountain to move, He commanded an illness to leave – in this case a fever. People in authority issue commands and expect them to be carried out. Do you know that if you have accepted Jesus as your Saviour and Lord that He has given you authority to command nature and diseases and they will obey you – if you do not doubt?

When a leader seems uncertain in his own authority, he will generally ask rather than command. Let me try to illustrate this so you can understand it. If you have a dog and wish to train it to obey you, you will need to establish a firm positive approach. If so, say to the dog, "please sit" in a kind gentle way it will not obey you. But if you say "sit" boldly, then make them sit and repeat this over and again, then the dog learns that when you say "sit" it knows exactly what to do. Again, using the dog illustration if you say gently to a dog "go home" it will not obey you. Yet if you firmly say, "go home", and repeat it until the dog gets the message, it will leave and go home. In other words, you must be clear about what you expect, be firm, and not accept anything other than what you commanded. So, when you say to a disease like cancer, "get out of this body now" you better say it with a firm and confident voice and expect it to obey. If at first it does not you don't quit either. You persist in your command until what you commanded is obeyed, knowing you have the authority to command it and it **MUST** obey you.

In like manner, Jesus has given to those who have put their faith in Him, the authority over **EVERYTHING** in this world. Can you believe that? Will you choose to believe that? Will you dare to act on that? Jesus not only took authority over sickness, but He did so over demons and He did so over nature itself when He rebuked the winds and waves of the sea, when His disciples all

thought they were going to drown. In like manner, we have been given authority over demons, sickness and nature itself.

### **The Centurion**

*Luke 7:6-10. Then Jesus went with them. And when He was already not far from the house, the centurion sent friends to Him, saying to Him, "Lord, do not trouble yourself, for I am not worthy that You should enter under my roof. Therefore, I did not even think myself worthy to come to You. But say the word, and my servant will be healed. For I am also a man placed under authority, having soldiers under me. And I say to one, 'Go,' and he goes; and to another, 'Come,' and he comes; and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it."*

*When Jesus heard these things, He marvelled at him, and turned around and said to the crowd that followed Him, "I say to you, I have not found such great faith, not even in Israel!" And those who were sent, returning to the house, found the servant well who had been sick.*

This story is profound to me in many ways. But what seems most significant is the fact that Jesus declared that this man's faith was exemplary, saying he had not seen such great faith before. So, what is it about the Centurion that signified his great faith? It seems that it was because he understood authority and the power inherent in Jesus to simply speak to the sickness of his servant "at a distance" fully expecting that it would be done as Jesus commanded. That Jesus had authority over all sickness. Of course, He did and so do you because Jesus has given you that authority since you have made Him your Lord.

*Proverbs 18:21- The tongue can bring death or life; those who love to talk will reap the consequences of what they say.*

Proverbs is said to have been written by a very wise man by the name of Solomon. Solomon himself in this verse recognizes the power of what we say to affect our lives for good or evil. It is not in fact just the words spoken however, but rather that spoken words heard repeatedly will sink into our spirit and when it does that, whatever we have spoken will become our experience, because of the law of belief.

*Romans 10:9 That if you will confess with your mouth the Lord Jesus and believe in your heart that God has raised him from the dead, you will be saved.*

As we see in this verse, there is a connection between the mouth and the heart (spirit). The more we confess something the more real it becomes. Throughout the ages people who have understood this, have used its power in political propaganda as well as in advertising. If you hear something enough times you will eventually come to believe it as true. Even a blatant lie repeated enough times in convincing ways, will cause the hearers to ultimately believe it. Hitler knew it and used it to his own ends.

This same thing happened at the turn of the century when so called scientists warned of impending doom due to an issue with clocks (known as Y2K). Of course, it proved to be a hoax and a lie to make money by forcing companies to panic and hire specialists to “fix” this threatening problem. As I write this book, we have yet another such lie on so called carbon emissions (carbon dioxide) that is destroying the planet. Again, it is driven by money (carbon tax) and is supposed to be proven by most of the world’s scientists. But so many people take the propaganda at face value as they did the Y2K threat. Lies, told in convincing ways, manipulating facts as they always do, are believed by many who do not seriously investigate the facts for themselves. This is also the result of a growing problem that people have made science into a god and believe everything so called scientists claim as fact. How foolish.

Although this scripture is speaking specifically about salvation, it does contain the principle of faith for all things. So, what we hear or allow ourselves to listen to, will ultimately become our reality and affect our behaviour and life. What we say to ourselves in our heads and sometimes out loud has the same effect. We therefore must be deliberate and careful about what we say or listen to. Have you really listened to what you say lately? I mean what do you say to yourself about things? What do you say to others? The tongue is more powerful than most have ever imagined and is the source of power to change everything. It all begins with the tongue, which as a rudder on a ship directs our destination and life.

Faith starts with the tongue – by what we declare or say. This is the rudder that will direct our lives. Once we grasp this, we can begin at once to develop faith for anything. By repetitively and with as much conviction and determination we can muster, we confess something, we will cause faith to activate in our heart (spirit), and that will always produce the results we desired. What you say will sooner or later sink into your spirit and produce results, which as I previously stated can be positive or negative. The order is to first speak what you desire as though it already exists, which in due course will become a belief in your spirit which will ultimately produce the result. Our effort therefore needs to be focused on what we confess as true. The rest will take care of itself.

*Mark 11:23,24 For truly I say unto you, That WHOEVER shall say unto this mountain, be removed, and be cast into the sea; and shall not doubt IN HIS HEART, but believe that those things he says will be done, he will have whatever he says. Therefore, I say to you, whatever things you ask when you pray, believe that you receive them, and you will have them.*

There is so much in this verse that we need to consider. Firstly, I want you to pay attention to the word Jesus used `WHOEVER`. You will note that it is not just for super spiritual or holy people. It is not even only for Christians, but it does include you! It is for ANYBODY who can believe, which means that there

is the possibility for any man or woman to believe and thus perform such a miracle.

The second very important thing we note from this verse is that you must speak to the mountain – as though it were a living thing with ears to hear you and obey. If you understand that through faith you have authority over the earth (in this case a mountain), it will change everything. Jesus spoke to the wind, to the waves to a fig tree to a fever and more as though they were all living creatures who had ears and volition. Jesus is saying here that we can do the same and the secret is not begging in prayer but speaking with authority in faith – believing it will hear you and obey you. That is mind boggling and goes against everything we have come to understand about our physical world and environment. Instead of us being subject to `mother nature` we come to see in this verse that we in fact have authority over mother nature. Can you see that we can command a volcano for example, to stop spewing ash and it will obey us if we speak to it with authority in faith?

The next part of this verse addresses our enemy – doubt. It says “*and shall not doubt in his heart (spirit)*”. Doubt always kills faith, so it is the enemy. How does one overcome doubt? By speaking the opposite loudly, forcefully, emotionally and repeatedly fully expecting it to obey you. This determination is the foundation of faith. It is not taking no or any other result for an option. There is no “plan B”. But you must declare it frequently with everything in you to move it from your head to your spirit.

The verse then goes on to say that if you have met the conditions – speaking to the mountain without doubt, then you will have what you say. Notice the words “*whatever he says*”. Are there any caveats or restrictions implied? Absolutely not! Jesus did not say “if it’s God’s will to move the mountain” then it will move. I used to be a strong proponent of praying and believing that my prayers would be answered “If” it was God’s will, but as I have spent hours, days and months in the scriptures I have come to see that I was wrong about faith.

Now Jesus uses the word “Therefore”. I had a marvellous teacher of prophecy at Bible College many years ago, and will never forget a statement he often made – If the scripture says “therefore” then you need to read the argument before the word – in other words see what it is “there for”. Jesus now provides us with the application of His declaration about how to move mountains. His conclusion is to the point and simple. *When you pray – believe that you have received what you have asked for and you will receive exactly what you believed and expected.* *Mark 11:24.* How sure are you of the outcome of your faith anyway? If you are 100% convinced that what you have spoken or believed will come to pass, then your faith will cause it to happen - No doubt about it. Will you dare to believe?

**The Universe Has Nothing to Do with It**

Today there is a popular teaching that claims if you believe, the universe will cause it to happen. What exactly is “the universe”? This is utter nonsense and based on some mystical premise often related to either fortune telling and occult practices involving the stars and planets – astrology, or as some believe, energy waves that cause what they believe to “manifest” themselves. The universe has nothing to do with it. The universe is a creation of God and has no power over the destiny of mankind – unless of course you believe it does. As you by now can see, the truth is that it is all about faith – a gift God has given to every man. *God has dealt to every man the measure of faith. Romans 12:3*

### **Why Do Bad Things Happen to Innocent Children?**

You may have been reading this book and disagreeing with what I am saying because you just cannot see how this could be when innocent children who have no understanding of these things can suffer evil. Perhaps they are suffering with heart problems, cancer or other health problems. They may also suffer abuse at the hands of others, physical, sexual or verbal abuse. If what happens to us is only because of our belief or unbelief, then how can this apply to those who don't understand or know better? Does God not care about the children, the mentally challenged, the ignorant or the weak?

This again is one of those very difficult things to understand, but I believe the Bible has the answer. First, let's get an understanding of what happened to mankind at the Garden of Eden. After Adam and Eve sinned, they had children. These children, being the offspring of sinful parents inherited the curse of the judgment of their parents and suffered not for what they did, but rather because of what their parents did. Though neither Adam nor Eve ever murdered anyone, their one son did – Cain, who murdered his brother Abel because of jealousy. Abel however seemed to have been a good son and had favour with God.

To us it seems unfair that innocent children should suffer for something they never did, but we need to understand that encoded in our genetics is a lot more than just physical appearance or features. Psychologists are now saying that the propensity to certain mental and behaviour problems seem to be somehow genetically encoded in the offspring too, though they have no idea how. Nobody has found a behaviour gene.

It is clear that not every child born suffers the same things as each other which is difficult to understand. But weaknesses in the parent's character and behaviour seem to pass on to future generations somehow. It is my contention that just as we inherit physical genetics, we also inherit spirit genetics from our forefathers. As with physical genetics, not every child is the same. They look different, have different personalities, and physical features. The same is evident of the spiritual differences found in offspring.

Under the law and before Christ paid for all sins, the scriptures say the following; *“maintaining love to thousands, and forgiving wickedness, rebellion and sin. Yet He does not leave the guilty unpunished; He punishes the children and their children for the sin of the parents to the third and fourth generation.”* Exodus 34:7

*Deuteronomy 5:9 You must not bow down to them or worship them, for I, the LORD your God, am a jealous God who will not tolerate your affection for any other gods. I lay the sins of the parents on their children; the entire family is affected - even children in the third and fourth generations of those who reject me.*

Although God is love, He is also a righteous judge and being righteous He simply cannot just forgive without someone paying the penalty. That is why Jesus had to die, otherwise it all would have been unnecessary. However, forgiveness of sins through Christ is not automatic. It comes through prayer and faith. When all our sins are washed away through Christ, then we can legitimately claim that the ramifications of our sins as parents do not follow on into the lives of our children. This fact is most often overlooked and misunderstood. Your child could be suffering due to the sins of some ancestor going back 4 generations and not even you as the parent.

Have you ever heard the term “family curse”? Why is it that some families seem to have similar problems through their generations and other families do not? The Kennedy family is one well known family that appears to be under some sort of curse. Curses could be the propensity to alcoholism, addictions, sexual perversions, inability to make commitments, hereditary illnesses and so on. The offspring are in fact born with these things in their spirit and body and are in fact not personally responsible for the way they are – at least not until they come to the knowledge of the truth and then choose not to do anything about it.

The Jews in Jesus day knew this, which is why Jesus’ disciples asked him, *“Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents, that he was born blind?”* John 9:2. In this situation, the blind man was not born blind because of any sin by his parents and could not be because of him for he was born that way. There are exceptions to every rule, and this is one of those exceptions. Generally, we can see that physical and mental disabilities can actually be the result of the unforgiven sins of the person or their forefathers going back 4 generations.

When Israel went into captivity in Babylon. the writer of Leviticus tells us the following, Leviticus 26: 39-42: *Those of you who are left will waste away in the lands of their enemies because of their sins; also because of their ancestors’ sins they will waste away. But if they will confess their sins and the sins of their ancestors—their unfaithfulness and their hostility toward me, which made me hostile toward them so that I sent them into the land of their enemies—then*

*when their uncircumcised hearts are humbled, and they pay for their sin, I will remember my covenant with Jacob and my covenant with Isaac and my covenant with Abraham, and I will remember the land.*

Here we see clearly that suffering is linked to our ancestors and that the only way forward is for the sins to be paid for. This was before Jesus came, so in their day it took repentance and the offering of the shed blood of an innocent lamb. God would then forgive the sins of their ancestors so that judgment for those sins would not be placed on them or their children.

If this is the reason why bad things happen to innocent children, (which I believe it is), then is there anything that can be done to stop it? That is a very good question and again the Bible is clear on the solution. Jesus is called the "*Lamb of God, that takes away the sins of the world*" John 1:29. And so today there is no need to sacrifice a lamb but instead repent on behalf of the ancestor who sinned. This act does not mean however that the offender now deceased is now free to go to heaven. It simply releases the living from the judgment for their sins.

Today all sins can and should be forgiven and placed under the blood of Jesus. Unconfessed sins by our ancestors can and will hurt us and our children unless we do something about it, by praying for forgiveness on their behalf and placing that sin or sins under the blood of Jesus, then in faith rejecting any further consequences for those sins.

But what if you don't exactly know which ancestor sinned or what they did that has caused suffering in your life or that of your children or grandchildren? God knows so all you must do is ask His forgiveness for past sins of your ancestors. You really don't need to know specifics. We can pray that God forgive our ancestors for their sins and ask God to free us from the consequences of their sins in our lives and the lives of our children, then believe He has and reject any further suffering due to their sins.

There are numerous stories that testify to miracles happening when people have confessed the sins of their ancestors in faith. Divine healings mentally, spiritually and physically have occurred and many have been set free from the curse that seemed to follow them through their family. Now that you know the truth, you too can be set free and you can in turn set your children free.

### **The Spirit Tongue Connection**

We have already briefly discussed the connection between the tongue and the spirit. Below are a few more Bible verses that declare the same thing.

*Proverbs 10:11 "The mouth of the righteous is a well of life. . ."*



The righteous have learned to speak life and good rather than cursing and deception. It is therefore no wonder that the mouth of the righteous is a well from which life with a capital "L" is sourced.

*Proverbs 12:6 ". . . the mouth of the upright will deliver them."*

Did you know that if you need deliverance from your situation or your enemies that it begins with your mouth - by what you confess as true? Many have simply been blinded to this fact and have instead resorted to all other forms or methods, to evoke change when all the while it was readily resolvable by what they confess and say. Seems too simple, doesn't it? But putting this into practice is a lot more difficult because we rely too much on our reasoning and our natural scientific worldview.

The moment we begin to confess what we desire as already in our possession (when sense evidence says it's not), we begin a battle in our minds. What "facts" are we going to accept as true? The more we stick to our confession despite that, the more real it becomes and once we cross the threshold of belief, we receive experientially what we confessed. It takes perseverance sometimes to break the old thought patterns. We desperately need reprogramming.

*Proverbs 12:14 "A man will be satisfied with good by the fruit of his mouth . . ."*

Are you tired of bad things happening in your life or the lives of those you love? Are you tired of being poor or sick? Are you tired of bad relationships and disappointment? Then heed the lesson of this verse. You can change it all and experience good things in your life if you will begin to say the right things over and over again until you believe it.

What you confess, you will start to believe. What you believe, your spirit will cause to come to pass according to the law of faith and then in due course, you will experience what you have truly believed. It really is not rocket science or complicated at all. It's quite simple and has been "under our noses" all along. Yet we have been blinded to it all, because of the misdirection we have been given through natural science and our reliance on our natural senses. These things are in fact our enemies and not our friends.

*Proverbs 12:18 ". . . the tongue of the wise promotes health."*

In this verse, we see the correlation of health and the tongue. Again, as we have learned, when we confess health, we experience health. When we say "I have "....." disease or illness then we do. Stop confessing the label the doctors have given to your experience. Eliminate the word "cancer" or diabetes or whatever else natural doctors have labelled you with. Instead confess health. Visualize yourself healthy and happy. Rejoice in your health and give God praise for your health. If you persist in doing so, it is inevitable that health will be yours. It cannot be any other way for it was ordained by God Himself.

*Proverbs 13:3 "He who guards his mouth preserves his life . . ."*

Have you ever been tempted to or spoken something you know you should not say? Many great books have been written about the power of the tongue and I do not intend to get too deeply into this same subject in this book. I would highly encourage you to read those books but remember one important thing. What you or others say repeatedly will sink into your spirit as a belief. When it does, it will be the rudder that will direct your course in life and will result in either good or evil experiences. Ultimately it is faith that changes things, but it all begins with the tongue and what we say or confess as true. Please take heed to this and get control of your tongue for your own good.

*Proverbs 15:4 "A wholesome tongue is a tree of life, but perverseness in it breaks the spirit."*

A wholesome tongue is one that speaks in line with the Word of God and speaks in faith. To solidify what you believe in your heart (spirit) it is also necessary to speak it. So, whatever you have decided to believe be sure to declare it out loud and to yourself often. In fact, the more you do so, the more powerful it becomes. *"faith comes by hearing...and hearing by the word of God". Romans 10:17*. But just hearing alone will not produce anything miraculous unless it is mixed with faith in the heart by the listener. This is also why when the scripture is speaking about eternal life it says, *"if you shall believe in your heart and confess with your mouth, the Lord Jesus Christ, you will be saved". Romans 10:9*. There is a powerful connection therefore between your heart (spirit) and your mouth.

But there is another aspect to the tongue we need to consider. *"out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks". Luke 6:45*. Now granted we sometimes have to "bridle" our tongues and often we do not say what we are really thinking. In some cases, this is helpful and necessary. But when under duress, or some other emotion, we tend to truly just "let it all out". That is when you find out what really is in your heart (spirit). This can be very useful though if you heed what came out of your mouth because what it will tell you is what is deep in your spirit affecting everything in your life.

In most cases, you will either be shocked or embarrassed by what comes out. You cannot deny what you spoke out loud and say, "I am not sure where that came from. That is not really me", Of course now you are fooling yourself, and embarrassed by what you said. Don't waste such outbursts or off-handed statements by dismissing them so easily. These are windows into your spirit that can be very telling as to what is hidden way deep down inside that is poisoning you and hurting your life.

A good therapist will engage their patient in such a manner as to evoke strong feelings and emotions which will result in words being spoken. These could be negative thoughts, cursing, hope or any number of things. The purpose of such

therapy is to bring out from the heart of the patient what is hidden within so that once revealed, help can be given to “reprogram” their thoughts and with that transform their lives.

When we say, “I have a bad feeling about...” we condition our spirit to expect something bad and when it happens, we assume it was foreknowledge. Typically, then we exclaim “I knew it”. The reality is that if we do not fight those feelings (NEVER accept bad feelings), then we cause something bad to happen. This is called a self-fulfilling prophecy. What you “feel” deep down is what will happen in due course unless you vigorously reject it and visualize something good instead.

*Proverbs 16:23 "The heart of the wise teaches his mouth and adds learning to his lips."*

Discipline yourself to speak the words of faith over yourself and your situation. Dig into the Bible and find out what God has to say about your condition. Learn the truth, know the facts and the promises. Don't rely upon your friends or even your pastor or priest, you need to see it for yourself. Your life is at stake here! What you believe matters more than you may have ever thought previously.

*Proverbs 21:23 "Whoever guards his mouth and tongue keeps his soul (life) from troubles".*

Let's be careful to put a guard on our mouth and say only what the Word of God says about our situation. See *2 Corinthians 10:3-5* I know it's tempting to moan and complain, but that won't bring about health. In fact, it will only bring about even more problems. Are you having troubles? Everyone does, but if you remain there and not overcome them then it is because of what you believe deep in your spirit. It is NOT because God has ordained it to be so, nor that the Devil has greater power over your life. These are false beliefs that result in unnecessary suffering. *Don't give up on your confession (EVER). In due season, you will always reap what you have sown. Galatians 6:9.* Why do so many people believe the "whoever" clause of *John 3:16 "For God so loved the world that he gave up his only begotten son, that whoever believes on Him shall be saved"*, but not the "whoever" clause of *Mark 11:23 "For truly I say to you, That whoever shall say to this mountain, Be you removed, and be you cast into the sea; and shall not doubt in his heart, but shall believe that those things which he said shall come to pass; he shall have whatever he said?"*

### **What Is Faith?**

***Faith is determined perseverance.*** Once you have made up your mind to believe then you don't quit until its done. I have prayed for people who were inhabited by demons and can tell you that I never quit praying and rebuking the devils until they left, and deliverance was experienced. Yet when we pray for the sick, we offer a quick prayer and leave. No, if we believe for anything then we with perseverance keep declaring the promises of God and take authority

over the adversity until we achieve success. If we truly believe that healing is ALWAYS God's will then why do we quit rebuking the disease or commanding it to leave? If we expect healing then stick with it until the healing comes, not accepting any other outcome. John G. Lake is a man who had an exceptional healing ministry. He is credited with over 100,000 healings in Spokane Washington alone years ago. He taught many others how to persevere in helping people receive healing and they have had remarkable success because they believe healing is part of what Jesus died for and will not accept any other outcome.

*1John 5:4 "For whatever is born of God overcomes the world: and this is the victory that overcomes the world, our faith".* Here then is the secret of overcoming the world and all its adversities and troubles. It is our faith. Through our faith in God and Jesus Christ, there is not a single thing this world can do to withstand our faith. But where is our faith? Since *"God has given to every man the measure of faith" Romans 12:3*, we all have it, but have perhaps never understood it before nor learned how to activate it. If you put into practice the things you will learn in this book, your faith will grow immensely and without fear or doubt. The result will be a life of joy, success, health and blessing. Is that not what you want?

*Hebrews 11:1 "Now, faith is being sure of what we hope for and certain of what we do not see".*

This verse is perhaps the most succinct in describing what faith is verses hope. It is being sure beyond doubt that what we have hoped for will come to pass though as yet we do not "see it" with any of our natural senses. The problem however has always been that we have not known how to get to this place where we have overcome doubt. It is natural to doubt but supernatural to believe. This book will give you several very simple ways to so impregnate your spirit that you will come to this place of "no doubt or fear whatsoever". It is simpler than you think, but tough to do, because of the battle we must face to overcome our natural tendencies and wrong thinking patterns.

### **Where Does Faith Come From?**

*Romans 10:17 So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.* Simply believing something does not make it real - there are many mentally ill people who believe the strangest things. That is NOT faith. But it is our confession that begins the change of direction for our lives. The rudder that helps us set a new course regardless of where we currently find ourselves. It is this rational, deliberate and determined effort to speak into existence that which we desire that will begin to change our circumstances. As we faithfully, daily confess a new confession of health and prosperity, it will sink into our spirit and when that happens, we will reap exactly what we have sown by what we have confessed as true. So, confess health, confess prosperity and they will be yours.

## **Deterrents to Faith**

*Matt 13:1-23* - The Parable of the sower. In this passage of scripture Jesus teaches a lesson on faith by means of a parable. In this parable, he talks about a sower who goes out to sow seeds. It is such a significant passage that I think we need to see what Jesus said. *"Then He spoke many things to them in parables, saying: "Behold, a sower went out to sow. And as he sowed, some seed fell by the wayside; and the birds came and ate them. Some fell on stony places, where they did not have much soil; and they immediately sprang up because they had no depth of soil. But when the sun was up, they were scorched, and because they had no root they withered away. And some fell among thorns, and the thorns sprang up and choked them. But others fell on good ground and yielded a crop: some a hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty. He who has ears to hear, let him hear!"*

Then he went on to explain what it meant. *"Therefore, understand the parable of the sower: When anyone hears the word of the kingdom, and does not understand it, then the wicked one comes and snatches away what was sown in his heart. This is he who received seed by the wayside"*.

Here we see that words of faith may not be understood. I believe so many good sermons on faith have been preached through the years, yet many do not truly understand it. That is why we see no fruit in the lives of the hearers even to this day. The hearers don't "get it". When this happens, we are told that Satan - "the wicked one", simply steals it and makes it of no effect. This book I trust will change all that for you, because at last you will understand and in understanding you will never again be robbed by Satan.

*"But he who received the seed on stony places, this is he who hears the word and immediately receives it with joy; yet he has no root in himself but endures only for a while. For when tribulation or persecution arises because of the word, he immediately stumbles"*.

The next significant experience is when the word of faith is deposited onto stony ground. Stony ground as we see here has no depth of commitment to hold on to the word spoken. Nevertheless, the words of faith are gladly received with hope and expectation. But then trouble comes along to cause them to doubt. The result is that their faith dies and withers away. In the end, there is no fruit whatsoever. Later in this chapter, we will take a closer look at what the Bible refers to as "the trial of faith" and its significance. Those who are easily dissuaded from believing are those who are still in the realm of hope and not faith, because faith cannot be dissuaded by circumstance or feelings.

*“Now he who received seed among the thorns is he who hears the word, and the cares of this world and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word, and he becomes unfruitful”.*

In this scenario, we see the seed being sown among thorns or weeds. It appears that these people receive the seed and it grows. But their primary faith objective is money and their security is in their possessions and they get caught up in life with all its pleasures and demands. When your focus is on these things you will soon lose faith and understanding as to how to control your life and thinking. Instead it gets crowded out by the affairs of life and making money which can be very deceitful. These things literally choke the seed of faith that at first began to grow and soon you are back to experiencing nothing miraculous or worthwhile. The deceitfulness of riches is that riches tend to cause men to feel that they have everything in life they want or need, and life becomes about possessions and pleasure. I pity the man who pursues wealth at any cost believing it is more important than anything else. There is nothing wrong with having wealth and in fact we should have it, but when it is our single focus we will be deceived. The Bible actually teaches us to be careful about wealth because of the attitudes it tends to create in the possessor of wealth. Things like pride, selfishness, riotous and carnal living and a tendency to trust in wealth rather than God. Remember that it is the “Love of money” that is the root of all evil – not money itself.

In my opinion many who preach the “prosperity gospel” today have fallen into this trap. Many have started out trusting God, but their motives have been for selfish gain. Men like Kenneth Copeland who have amassed a fortune some estimate at over \$700 million at this writing and live in a mansion. This is obviously not wealth gained for the kingdom of God and if God were to ask him to give it all away for the sake of the gospel, I would suspect he would not be able to do so. Just like the young wealthy man who came to Jesus and asked what he should do to be saved, Jesus asked him to give his wealth to the poor and come follow him. The scripture tells us that this young man left sorrowful because he could not let go of his wealth for the kingdom. I believe that only the strong can survive wealth without it owning them. Our eyes must always be on Christ and His kingdom and all the wealth we gain is not for our own selfish lusts and pleasures but for His kingdom – to feed the poor, clothe the naked, preach the true gospel of repentance from sin and faith in Jesus Christ. Only that should be our motive for gaining wealth.

*“But he who received seed on the good ground is he who hears the word and understands it, who indeed bears fruit and produces: some a hundredfold, some sixty, some thirty.”*

The first thing we note about this group of people is not only do they readily receive the word, but they understand it. This is so critical for growth and by the

time you conclude reading this book you will have great understanding of what faith is, how to grow it and how to reap its rewards.

The second part of this verse is that there are degrees of fruitfulness. I believe this is the result of how well the seed has been cultivated and watered. In other words, how well you keep practising your faith and applying what you have learned in this book. If you get lazy and get focused on other less important matters, then your fruitfulness will decrease. Be sure to read this book frequently, ponder its concepts and remind yourself daily. You must make it a part of your everyday life and if you do, you and others around you will be amazed at what you are able to do. Apply it to every area of your life and you will be fruitful in all things.

I want to remind you that thoughts and ideas are just like seeds that we sow to our spirit and that of others with whom we speak. We see from the parable that seed sown in the wrong place soon lands up doing nothing. If you are receptive to the seeds I am planting into your mind through this book, then there is promise of a harvest. If you are instead hardened to the ideas, then you will soon discard it all and become unfruitful - never accomplishing much in your life. It is up to you.

*John 15:16 You have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you, that you should go and bring forth fruit, and that your fruit should remain: that WHATEVER you shall ask of the Father in my name, He may give it to you.*

It was not our idea to be fruitful. It was God's. He created us to be fruitful in ALL we do. We see that right in the Garden of Eden when God told Adam and Eve to multiply. He ordained the same for all the animal and plant kingdom. The nature of God is always "for growth and profit".

The latter part of this verse again uses the word "whatever" - no limitations whatsoever. **If you can without shame, guilt or doubt ask God for it, then God will give it to you - not might but will.** We are further introduced here to the concept of asking in the "name of Jesus". Many people simply preface their prayers with "in the name of Jesus". However, I believe that its meaning is far greater than saying the words. It literally means to ask in "the authority" of Jesus. This means that Jesus endorses it to the Father who has given all authority in heaven and earth to Jesus. Would the Father hold any request back from Jesus? Of course not, and Jesus said that if we are His because we have trusted Him in faith, then He will countersign our request to ensure we get from God what we have asked for. You can't get greater support or pull than that from anyone.

*John 15:7 If you abide in me, and my words abide in you, you will ask what you will, and it will be done to you.*

So, what does it mean to abide? The dictionary definition is "to continue in a particular condition, attitude, and relationship". This verse is found in a passage of scripture that uses the illustration of a vine and its branches. Does a vine really have branches? No, it does not. The vine is one, and that is what Jesus implies here. If you remember, we previously stated that the manifestation of power is the cooperation of our spirit with God. This is what makes a believer in Jesus Christ potentially more powerful and fruitful than a non-Christian believer.

When you know that you are staying steadfast in the promises of God - His words abiding in you, and when you continue your faith in Him - abiding in Him, then whatever you ask for WILL be done for you. Again, there are no exceptions to this and no limitations either - excepting our faith to believe it is true.

### **Be Specific**

*Matthew 21:22 And ALL THINGS, whatsoever you shall ask in prayer, believing, YOU WILL receive.*

I hope that by now you are getting convinced that God has set no limitations on what you can ask for or believe for. So please quit with the silly religious excuses of blaming God for not receiving from Him what you asked for because it's not His will. The fault lies most definitely in your faith and nowhere else. But until you own up to your sin of unbelief nothing will change. Just as with an alcoholic, there is no hope of recovery from his addiction until and unless he owns it and admits to it without excuses or blaming others. If you are a doubter, then ask for forgiveness and determine to believe God no matter what.

But how will you know if your prayer was answered unless you are specific? So many well-meaning people use the old cliché "bless me" or "bless them". What exactly does that look like? Bless in what way, how much etc.? You will never know the joy of answered prayer until you ask specifically so God can answer specifically.

*Mark 11:24 Therefore I say unto you, WHATEVER THINGS you desire, when you pray, believe that you have received them, and YOU WILL have them.*

In this verse, again we see the "no limitations" words applied to prayer. We also see the implication of "your desire". What is it you want? You need to be clear yourself about that. For example, don't just pray for financial blessing. How much do you want, and for what purpose? Kenneth Hagin whom many people call the "father of the faith movement", talks about how he learned that and began asking God for exactly how much he needed each week and commanded that it be done. Miraculously and without any manipulation on his part he received suddenly all he asked and believed for. If you can with a clear



conscience ask for it, then be specific. Lord I need a wage of \$10,000 a month to provide for my family needs. So, when you receive what you have asked for and believed for, you will see it is exactly \$10,000 and God will be glorified as a result.

The next part of this verse is interesting because of the tense it uses. The tense in fact is that of a past event or at the very least present. It in no way refers to a future event. So, what are the implications of this? Here we are taught that faith is a "now faith". It claims whatever it needs or is requesting NOW.

Let me try to help you grapple with this concept. Let's say my son asked me for a \$1,000. If I acted as God does, the answer would be "okay". But does he have it when I say okay? Not yet. Yet, he will gladly stop asking and be happy knowing that what I promised I would fulfill. In like manner, when we ask God for anything in faith, we need to recognize His answer is ALWAYS yes. At that point, we then ought to be at peace and start praising and thanking Him because He will make good the promise of answered prayer. Confess it with your mouth, believe it in your heart and it will surely be yours.

### **The Trial of Faith**

*1 Peter 1:7 That the trial of your faith, being much more precious than of gold that perishes, though it be tried with fire, might be found unto praise and honour and glory at the appearing of Jesus Christ.*

We now come to a very important aspect of faith and that is that real faith is proven in the face of trials. The trial of our faith is not however more precious than gold. It is faith that is much more precious than gold, because with it nothing is impossible. It's like the difference between having the goose that lays the golden eggs and the golden eggs themselves. Which would you prefer having? Having faith is more valuable a possession than anything this world could ever offer you. Have faith and you have anything you want or need anytime. This gift of faith is a treasure beyond anything in this world. Why waste your time pursuing anything else? Pursue faith and you will have everything else in life you desire or need.

### **Abraham's Trial**

After almost 25 years of patiently waiting in faith for the promised son, God miraculously gave him Isaac. Things were great, and the years began to pass by with joy until one day, God calls on Abraham to do the unthinkable, sacrifice his one and only son – his miraculous son, the son that assured the promise that his future generations would be like the sand on the beach or the stars of heaven. This was an impossible situation. I can only imagine the anguish Abraham felt and how confused he must have been. Are you sure God? Why would you give me a son then take him away from me? How will I tell his mother? How will I

explain it to anyone? How would I get my son to go along with it? And you thought you had a tough decision? Just put yourself in his shoes for a moment.

But scripture doesn't tell us about how Abraham felt nor how long it took for him to take action. What it does tell us is that Abraham believed God so strongly about his promised son, that he also believed that God would raise him up again from the dead. Can you imagine that? Had Abraham any reason to believe that was even possible? Yet he did.

God made him go through the motions. He bound his son, placed him on the alter and was about to stab him to death when at the last second, God told him to stop. Abraham passed two important tests that day. The first was his faith that never waivered and the second was his obedience to God. Every trial of faith involves both of these elements for the Christian.

What is God asking you to do? Does it make sense to you? Is He asking you to give up something you know He gave you through faith in the first place? I have read many stories of God providing financially for someone in need then ask them to give it to someone else even though they desperately needed it themselves. You see if we truly trust God then we need not hang onto anything because God will always supply our needs as we trust Him and ask in faith.

True faith sees no shortage and therefore holds onto nothing. There is no need to because whatever you need, God will provide if you obey Him and trust Him in faith. How do you know you have faith? When everything you have asked for and believed for at first seems to be 100% in the opposite direction of your experience and yet you can still claim you believe without doubting; then you most assuredly have faith. If in the face of opposition, you waiver or begin to doubt, then you do not have faith at all. It was merely hope. You see faith ignores current circumstances and focuses solely on the desired outcome knowing assuredly that it will happen no matter what is currently going on.

Sometimes people read a book like this and get all excited and want to go from 0 to 100 in 5 seconds. That is as foolish as the person who decides to be a body builder and on the very first visit to the gym expects to bench press 300 lbs. It's not likely. You must commence building your muscles and work up to that. In like manner, your faith should start with the smaller things so that you can prove it to be true to yourself. With gained confidence of answered prayer you can move on to greater things until like the seasoned body builder you are able to accomplish amazing things you never thought possible before.

*Luke 22:31,32 And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan has desired to have you, that he may sift you like wheat: But I have prayed for you, that your faith will not fail: and when you are converted (turned back), strengthen your brothers.*

This verse is very encouraging and insightful in many ways. Firstly, we see that one of the premier disciples of Jesus faces a trial of faith that he never imagined. He had previously stated to Jesus that he would never leave Him or deny Him. Even in the garden of Gethsemane, he is ready to fight - chopping off the ear of the high priest's servant. Peter meant well and was going to prove his devotion to Jesus.

But perhaps lurking behind his motivation was pride, which gave Satan opportunity to "sift him as wheat". Jesus however prayed for him and Jesus was so confident of his success that he goes on to tell Peter what to do after he recovers from this failure. We then further read of how Peter not only denied he even knew Jesus once but three times - even as Jesus had predicted. Peter at that point was a broken man. He felt like such a failure and so unworthy.

Have you failed to believe God for anything you have ever prayed for? Did you start out in faith only in the end to turn your back on it all? This verse reveals to us the amazing grace of Jesus Christ that is able and willing to pick us up when we fall flat on our faces. Perhaps you feel so guilty and just can't face up to your failure. A loved one died maybe because of lack of faith or some tragedy happened in your life or to your family because of your negative faith or doubts.

Dear fellow believer, we have all failed at one time or another, so you are in good company. God knows our frame and is not that surprised. But by His grace He can turn us back, lift us up, dust us off and help us try again. Never quit trying.

### **The Latent Power of The Soul**

Many years ago, a missionary known as Watchman Nee wrote a book entitled "The latent power of the soul". In his book, he attempted to explain how it was that non-Christian people were able to perform miracles, many of which he had observed in India and Tibet during his ministry. The basis of his conclusion was that men were endowed with supernatural power, which he believed resided in the soul of men. Since animals have souls and are unable to perform miracles, I would have to personally disagree with him on that point. However, he goes on to suggest that perhaps we should not use this power apart from God.

Personally, I have no issue with anyone performing miracles causing good in the world. I do however suggest that doing such deeds is not enough. Jesus himself made an alarming statement, *"Many will say to me on that day, 'Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name and in your name drive out demons and in your name perform many miracles?' Then I will tell them plainly, 'I never knew you. Away from me, you evildoers!'"* *Matthew 7:22,23*

It is imperative to also become personally acquainted with our creator and saviour, the one who endowed us with these abilities and to get in a right

relationship with Him. However, Watchman Nee was correct; men of all faiths and religions have and do perform miracles.

One thing Nee suggests that is very enlightening however, is the fact that nowhere in the Bible do we see Satan with great power other than to deceive. It is through him (a spirit being himself) and the fallen angels that follow him, that we receive thoughts of evil, fear, and failure. We are defeated by believing his lies, which are cleverly disguised often as science or "reality". They sound logical, but if they were obviously lies, nobody would believe them, would they? A poison apple is not all poison but a good apple in which is hidden poison. Satan's power in this world is wielded through us, while he takes all the credit for it. There are many false religions in the world yet most of them contain worthy and good things, otherwise who would join them? Nevertheless, we need to be careful and observe the core of those beliefs wherein resides the poison that could kill.

### **The "G" Factor**

Although the gift of faith is given to all men, there are those who are deceived today as Adam and Eve were, into believing that they do not need God nor a relationship with Him. Certainly, because God endowed men with this amazing power, miracles can be performed even by those who do not acknowledge God nor perhaps even believe in His existence. These poor individuals have bought into the same lie of Satan spoken to Eve, that they themselves can be gods not needing God. It is foolishness to take only a part of the truth revealed in scripture through the ages, reap rewards of the understanding thus gained, yet reject the one who has created us and revealed these things to us.

In the story of Moses in the courts of Pharaoh we see the interaction of power between Moses and the "miracle men" of the courts of Pharaoh. When Moses cast down his staff and it turned instantly into a serpent, so did these men. We think we are better than people in previous generations, yet I have not seen people in this generation capable of doing that. We still haven't even figured out the pyramids. In any case, Moses' serpent ate up all the others. The story is no allegory though but really happened. Through our "higher education" we no longer see much of these supernatural things being practised, though some still do, but is repudiated by those who consider themselves more educated, because they do not understand it and cannot explain it either.

The greatest power belongs to those who rely on God and are in relationship with Him. There are no doubt degrees of power and ability, and you would be wise to acknowledge God the creator of all things and to obey Him, rather than assume you are your own authority and can do whatever you like apart from Him. You need to understand that the power resident in you, was given to you by God and not of yourself, so don't get too full of yourself or high minded,

especially when you cause miracles to happen because even the faith to believe is a gift from God and nothing you earned or deserved.

There was a time in ancient history, when men had become so great in their ability to imagine and believe, that God Himself said that there was nothing that they imagined that they could not do. *And the LORD said, Behold, the people is one, and they have all one language; and this they begin to do: and now nothing will be restrained from them, which they have imagined doing. Genesis 11:6* That is truly amazing. These people decided to build a tower that would reach into the heavens. It is hard to understand the significance of this and why God was not in favour of it. Nevertheless, even though through imagination and belief they were well able to construct it, God put a stop to it by confusing their languages. This is the story of the Tower of Babel. So even when men can do anything they can imagine, conceive and believe, they are fools if they have ignored the “God Factor”. God is able and will intervene when it is necessary and despite the standard principle of faith, He will prevent it from happening. As with gravity that always affects all men, Jesus on one occasion overrode it by walking on water. So too God at any time can and will override our faith when it is against Him or His purposes.

Although you did not create yourself, you have been given the power over your destiny if you will grasp the truth revealed in this book. Throughout the ages, men have assumed falsely that God or the gods determined their destiny. They have learned to accept failure, hardship and poverty as their lot in life, believing some outside force or power determined it. Some believe their lives are directed by the stars, some through Karma or the pronouncement of some fortune teller, but nothing could be further from the truth. Poverty, sickness, premature death and the like are the result of sin, (giving Satan authority to harm us) not the result of the will of the “gods” or God Himself. Jesus came to change all of that because He came to undo the works of the Devil. As land left to itself produces weeds, so our lives left uncultivated and unmanaged, will be filled with many negative and harmful things. This happens to all men simply because the earth and all its inhabitants are under the curse of sin.

I do however believe that God has created us individually for a purpose and endowed each of us with different talents, abilities, circumstances and passions. As with all nature, God has created a balance. We need to know what our passion is, what we feel deep inside, excited about and what makes us want to get out of bed in the morning. But adversity comes to all men to make them stronger, to test them. The only value to struggle is growth. We cannot grow without adversity, but we are not to be overcome by it but rather to overcome all adversity through faith. A man of faith does not lack adversity, in fact he may face even more adversity, but he will overcome every one of them as his faith grows and is strengthened. Jesus himself faced many adversities in his life, yet He overcame them all through His faith.

Our failure is because we have not deliberately molded our thinking and believing and instead have allowed random thoughts or careless words of others to impregnate our minds. For many it is the belief that God does whatever He likes on the earth and we are helpless victims of circumstance who have no way to effect the changes we desire because it is all up to God or the universe. These fatalistic false assumptions have caused millions of people to simply accept failure, sickness etc. rather than overcome it. We were created and destined to be successful in life. We were created to overcome sickness and disease. Many Christians disagree with that statement however based not on scripture but rather on experience. It has always fascinated me that these folks do not have the faith to believe for divine healing but will not hesitate to gain health through doctors and medicine. I am not suggesting that medicine or doctors cannot help but rather question in whom you truly put your trust. God can heal with or without doctors. The power is resident in every man, woman or child through faith to be healed. Remember that faith is certain of the outcome.

### **Believing in Yourself**

A popular teaching today is that you need to love yourself and believe in yourself. This teaching is intended to help people beyond feeling helpless or lesser than others. It is a teaching of self reliance rather than reliance on others. It is a way to take control of your life rather than be a victim of the intent and plans of others. It has helped many people rise from the ashes, take control of their lives and accomplish great things. Many remarkable stories are told by successful individuals who endorse this idea by sharing how things changed when they started believing in themselves. Evidently then it is a good thing to believe in yourself, your talents, your abilities and your strength.

But inevitably there comes a time when you let yourself down. When you find yourself out of control regardless of the effort you put in. The reality is that we are all human and subject to failure. Sometimes circumstances come along that thwart us or hinder us from the achievement we believe we are capable of. The Bible also points out that “Pride precedes failure”. Just when you think you have it all together, everything falls apart and you find yourself disillusioned, frustrated and confused. This is in fact a good thing, because faith in oneself can only go so far. Faith in a God who is greater than you, greater than your problems and circumstances and greater than any man, will transform you to a level of achievement otherwise not possible.

Many people know of the story of David and Goliath. Goliath was a giant of a man. He was fierce and very self confident because of it. He challenged the armies of Israel to send out their best soldier to fight him, but they were all terrified. Goliath had every reason to believe in himself. But then comes along a fifteen-year-old boy who dares to take up the challenge. Now David as it

appears also had reason to believe in himself. He had rescued a lamb from the jaws of a lion, he had killed a bear with his hands. This young lad had every reason also to believe in himself. BUT, when Goliath stated that he would chop off David's head and feed his body to the birds, David did not respond in his own ability or self confidence. Instead he relied completely on his God to give him victory over this giant. So, David said basically the same thing to Goliath, that he would chop off his head and feed his body to the birds. This epic battle was not based on how much each person believed in themselves, though from the outside it may have appeared that way. The reason David defeated Goliath is because he believed in a God who was greater than himself and certainly greater than Goliath. David viewed Goliath as nothing compared to his God and because he trusted in God, he won the battle, even though it was by his own actions.

### **Does Faith in Any god Work?**

Today many espouse the idea that so long as you have faith in a higher power or god greater than yourself then that is all you need. Some simply see this "power" as an inanimate energy perhaps emitted from the universe that when tapped into will produce miracles, victories and success. But I hope to show you that this is a false notion.

Another epic battle in the history of Israel (and there were many), is told about a prophet by the name of Elijah, whom we referred to earlier in this book. Elijah was frustrated because many of his countrymen were following a different god than the God of Israel. This god's name was Baal. So, Elijah challenged them to a battle to see who worshipped the greater god. The challenge was to build an alter, place a sacrificed animal on the alter and call on their god to send fire from heaven to consume the sacrifice. All day the leaders of this religion, prayed, cut themselves and did everything they could think of to get their god to take action and consume the sacrifice, All the while Elijah mocked them, suggesting their god might be sleeping or away on vacation and maybe that's why he was not responding. In the end they gave up because nothing happened.

Elijah however wanted to be sure nobody could accuse him of some trickery, so he ordered a trench dug around his sacrifice and then have the sacrifice totally soaked with water so much so that the trench was filled also with water. Everything was soaked so no man could ignite it and get it to burn. Elijah then calls on his God, The God of Israel, and sure enough not only does fire come out of heaven straight down on the sacrifice, but it burns everything to a crisp and all the water is instantly evaporated.

This story and many others I could tell you about are conclusive evidence and proof that it certainly does matter who your god is. There is only one true God, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. No other god can compare to Him and no other god can stand against Him. So, who is your God? Have you been relying

on yourself as your own god? Or perhaps do you worship or believe in another god? It is also significant to know that God has given to Jesus Christ a name above all names and at His name EVERY knee will bow both in heaven and on earth. Those who refuse to bow now willingly, will find themselves bowing in time to come because they will one day come to know that Jesus is Lord of all.

### **Faith's Scope**

This book deals with faith or belief and how it controls our experiences in this life – our wealth, health and wisdom. However, faith is more far reaching than just that. Whether or not you believe that there is a hereafter right now, there is plenty of evidence even apart from the Bible that suggests that there is. Even the most primitive of men through history have intuitively known this.

Many people in this generation who do believe there is a God also believe he is a God of Love. Of course, the Bible does say *God is Love. 1 John 4:8*. However, this is taken as the whole character of God and intimates there is no other aspect to His character. Even a casual reader of the Bible however could not come to this conclusion because the Bible reveals He is a Holy God, that no sin or sinner can stand in His presence and live. He is depicted also as a righteous judge who will condemn the sinner to eternal suffering in hell. Some believe that hell does not exist and even if it did, they believe God will simply annihilate the sinner, but they are incorrect because the Bible clearly says it is a place of everlasting punishment and suffering.

In the last few years, I have attended numerous funerals of acquaintances, many of them were good people but died not having professed faith in Jesus Christ. What I have heard over and over, is the statement by those who attend is “well at least he/she are in a better place now”. This statement is based on the belief that generally good people all go to heaven, yet that is not what the Bible teaches at all. *All have sinned and come short of the glory of God. Romans 3:23* And also; *The wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ. Romans 6:23*

All religions of the world recognize a “higher power” and most believe that if they do good deeds or live a good life or are baptized or partake of the mass or some other ritual, they are guaranteed to go to heaven. But, one thing is clear, religions of all stripes teach that we must obey the leaders of that religion, or a set of rules (laws) and do good deeds of various kinds in order to earn the right to go to heaven.

The Bible however teaches the complete opposite. It says that “*all our good deeds are as filthy rags*” *Isaiah 64:6*. Nobody is “good enough” to get into heaven. That is a dismal statement indeed leaving us without hope. However, God had a plan that would make it possible for any man to get eternal life. Strangely, the basis of obtaining eternal life is faith – just as it is for living on



earth. This faith, however, cannot be based on the random imagination or belief of the individual unless it is based on the way the Bible says we are to have faith.

It appears that faith in Jesus Christ, being the son of God, who died a sinless man for the punishment of all mankind, is the only way to obtain eternal life. Now if you are of a different religion or belief, I know this may offend or anger you. Of course, every man must choose for himself what or who he will believe in, but I personally have concluded that Jesus alone is the only acceptable way given by God. Why have I come to that conclusion? Is it based solely on my upbringing? No. Is it based on Jesus' wise teachings? No. Is it based on His miracles? No. So then what makes Jesus different from all the wise men and religious leaders this world has ever known?

Jesus not only claimed to be the son of God, but He proved it by predicting His own death and resurrection. When He arose from the dead, He proved He had power over death which no other man ever has. He was also seen by over 500 eyewitnesses after his resurrection. For that reason, I must conclude that He was who He claimed to be and therefore what He taught is the truth and that eternal life is only given to those who have faith in Him. Many great men have worked diligently to disprove the resurrection only to finally conclude that the evidence is irrefutable, and they have themselves ended up professing faith in Jesus. Some great books to read that have done an excellent job on the subject are "Evidence that demands a verdict" and "More than a carpenter" by Josh McDowell.

So, to summarize; Faith is not only necessary for living a happy fulfilled life on earth, it is also the very same principle that gives us eternal life. It is not externals, not our good deeds or sacrifices. It is by faith alone. If you have never accepted by faith, Jesus' death for your sins personally, I want to encourage you to do so right now - before you read on in this book. Your eternal destination is determined by whether you do this and place your complete faith and trust in Him. This is unquestionably the most important thing you can have faith for. The rest is merely temporal.

To do so simply say the following prayer out loud and mean it.

**"Lord Jesus, I recognize that you are the son of God and that you died for my sins, that I might have eternal life. By faith, I now accept you as my Lord and Saviour and put my trust fully in you. Cleanse me now from all my sins and make me new through the power of your spirit. Amen!!**

If you have done this, then the Bible says that you are "born again" and part of the family of God. You and Jesus are now united and have been made right with God. This is how the Bible defines a true Christian. Welcome to the family. I also want to encourage you to find a church that believes in salvation through

faith alone, which will help you grow in faith and where you can learn more about what it means to live a Christian life. Ask God to direct you and He will.

I hope that as you have read through this chapter that it has opened your eyes to God's goodness, His love and His amazing grace; that you have come to see how great and precious and reliable His promises really are and in so doing to believe.

## **CHAPTER 5**

### **Methods Don't Matter – Only Belief Does**

I recently spoke with a man who practised as a Naturopath. He told me of some extensive training he had taken to become a Shaman in Mexico. In his experience, he was given some sort of drug and while under the influence of this drug, he was told that a serpent would appear to him and would grant him supernatural powers to heal. Apparently, it did happen. He now claims to be able to cure cancer and in fact was forced into exile from Canada for a time because of his practices and was charged with practising medicine without a license. He truly believes he has a special gift and many of his patients can testify to miraculous cures by him, including the head of oncology at the local hospital who contracted stomach cancer.

In all ages, unofficial healers have obtained remarkable results in cases where authorized medical skill has failed. This gives cause for thought. How do these healers in all parts of the world effect their cures? The answer to all these healings is due to the blind belief of the sick person, which released the healing power resident in his spirit. These healers however have been frowned upon by modern doctors who believe it is they that know best how to cure the sick through surgeries and drugs. In fact, many "faith healers" were arrested for practising medicine without a license, and in some places even today are treated with contempt because they are a threat to these "more enlightened" medicine men. I want to however state here again that I am not suggesting in any way that modern doctors are not good and can't help you. We are a 3 part being and our bodies are affected by the natural elements we live in. I personally do not believe doctors should be avoided by any means but relying on them for the final word on how or if you will recover is another matter.

Many of the remedies and methods employed were rather strange and fantastic which fired the imagination of the patients, causing an aroused emotional state. This state of mind facilitated the suggestion of health and was accepted both by the conscious mind and spirit of the sick. This will be elaborated on further in the next chapter.

Today in first world nations, we believe in and trust in medications yet for some people it does not work. Some claim that it is because everyone's chemical makeup is different but is that really the reason? The differentiating factor I believe is in fact the belief in the medication to heal them. Biologically of course we do know that there are some things that can help with our health, but faith overrides all such compounds. In fact, numerous studies have been conducted using placebos and because the patients believed they were the real thing and that it would cure them, they miraculously got well. Doctors have assumed that in those cases the illness was likely just psychosomatic in the first place, but

they are wrong because all healing is the result of belief and all sickness begins in the mind.

I have also personally observed people who for years had been addicted to heroin and LSD get instant healing - no withdrawals whatsoever. That is not physically possible, yet they experienced it. How? Well quite simply it was the result of their faith in Jesus Christ to heal them and make them whole.

### **Biblical Accounts on The Use of The Spirit Powers**

The success of faith in the promises of God as found in the Bible depends on the confident conviction that the promise, thought, the idea, the picture is already a fact. For anything to have substance in the realm of the mind, it must be thought of as actually existing there. In addition, the recognition of God and complete trust in this His promise is the foundation of belief. *“For he that comes to God must believe He is, and that He is the rewarder of those who diligently seek Him”*. Hebrews 11:6. Since God created us in His image, it seems only logical that whatever He reveals as truth is in fact the truth and anything that argues is false. It is “fake news”. We change our present physical feelings and experiences by changing our belief, by creating in our mind the result we desire to see and accepting that as our reality, ignoring the outward, physical reality at the present time.

Here in a few words is a concise and specific direction for making use of the creative power of thought by impressing upon your spirit the thing, which you desire. Your thought, idea, plan, or purpose is as real on its own plane as your hand or your heart. In following the Biblical teaching, you completely resist with your mind all consideration of conditions, circumstances, feelings or anything, which might imply adverse contingencies. You are planting a seed (concept) in your mind, which, if you leave it undisturbed, will infallibly germinate into external fruition. Nevertheless, you can expect a constant battle with the rational mind who continues to look for evidence based on its five senses. These must be rejected outright as false evidence otherwise you will "change your mind" and destroy the root of faith that began to spring up.

The prime condition, which Jesus insisted upon, was faith. Repeatedly you read in the Bible Jesus saying, *“According to your faith is it done unto you”*. If you plant certain types of seeds in the ground, you expect they will grow after their kind. This is the way of seeds, and trusting the laws of growth and agriculture, you know that the seeds will reproduce after their kind. Faith as mentioned in the Bible, is a way of thinking, an attitude of mind, an inner certitude, knowing that the idea you fully accept in your conscious mind will be embodied in your spirit and in due course made manifest. Faith is, in a sense, accepting as true what your reason and natural senses deny, i.e., a shutting out of the little, rational, analytical, conscious mind and embracing an attitude of complete reliance on the promise of God and through the inner power of faith released

through your spirit. Faith is indeed blind - blind to the natural surroundings and circumstances, but clearly seeing as reality the object of your faith. That is why the Apostle Paul said, *“For we walk by faith not by sight” 2 Corinthians 5:7*

Faith however differs from hope in that hope is passive wishful thinking and puts you at the mercy and whims of some outside influence or force. Faith on the other hand is deliberate, active taking control of the situation with determination to cause the desired effect. It is by no means wishful.

A classical instance of Bible faith is recorded in *MATTHEW 9:28-30*. *And when he was come into the house, the blind men came to him: and Jesus said to them, do you believe that I am able to do this? They said to him, Yes, Lord. Then he touched their eyes, saying, according to your faith be it unto you. And their eyes were opened.*

In the words, “according to your faith be it unto you”, you can see that their faith was necessary in order to receive. Their faith was their great expectancy, their inner feeling, their inner conviction that something miraculous would happen, and that their prayer would be answered, and it was. This is the time proven technique of healing, utilized alike by all healing groups throughout the world regardless of religious affiliation. Jesus even though being the son of God, did not operate outside of the laws of faith and is master of all things related to faith. He is after all *“the author and finisher of our faith”*. *Hebrews 12:2*

When the sick came to Jesus to be healed, they were healed by their faith together with His faith through the conduit of their spirit. Jesus operated in faith just as we can and should. He often rebuked His disciples for their unbelief. Whatever He decreed, He felt and knew inwardly to be true.

The principle of faith is as real and powerful as gravity. It is what we believe positively or negatively that produces our outcome in life. But at times people lack faith or their faith is weak. We see for example in Jesus' time that he healed everyone. Did they really all have such great faith? Then we see Jesus raising people from the dead. Did their loved ones have faith? – of course the deceased person couldn't because they were dead. So how did these miracles occur then? It was the faith of Jesus Himself that effected the miracles. If you pray for someone who is weak in faith or perhaps doesn't have any faith, then don't blame them for not being healed. Your faith should cause the miracle. When Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead nobody except Jesus believed. Faith is necessary by someone though and it is even more effective when both the healer and the sick person believe.

### **Miracles at Various Shrines Throughout The World**

It is an established fact that cures have taken place at various shrines throughout the world, such as in Asia, Europe, and India. Many of the shrines contain

statues or images related to a religion, whether they be a statue of Mary, the mother of Jesus, or Buddha or one of the many deities worshipped in India or Africa. Although worship of an image is idolatry and God forbids idolatry, nevertheless miracles do sometimes occur and sadly people who are deceived or void of the truth give credit to the idol or deity rather than God, who gave them the power of faith to believe.

### **One Universal Healing Principle**

It is a well-known fact that all the various schools of healing effect cures of all kinds. The most obvious conclusion is that there must be some underlying principle, which is common to them all. It is my observation and conclusion that the common denominator in all cases is the spirit, and the one and only process of healing is faith.

It will now be in order to recall to your mind once more the following fundamental truths: First that you possess mental functions, which have been distinguished by designating one the conscious mind and the other the spirit.

Secondly, your spirit is constantly amenable to the power of suggestion. Furthermore, your spirit has complete control of the functions, conditions, and sensations of your body. I venture to believe that all the readers of this book are familiar with the fact that symptoms of almost any disease can be induced in hypnotic subjects by suggestion. For example, a subject in the hypnotic state can develop a fever, flushed face, or chills according to the nature of the suggestion given.

By experiment, you can suggest to the person that he is paralyzed and cannot walk, and it will be so. By illustration, you can hold a cup of cold water under the nose of the hypnotic subject and tell him, "This is full of pepper; smell it!" He will proceed to sneeze. What do you think caused him to sneeze, the water or the suggestion?

This indicates that the cause of the disease and its symptoms is in the mind. The healing of the disease also first takes place mentally. Some people are insulted by such a suggestion, because they have believed in the material explanation to all things, being educated in science and medicine, and they have a very difficult time correlating this. It just seems too unreal - too fantastic - too weird. But as the stories I have and will further share in this book prove, they are very real. I hope that if you are one of those scientific minded people you will come to see and understand that all things physical are not quite as they appear. In fact, a new branch of science has begun called metaphysics that tries to explain the strange and spontaneous healings experienced by some. But again, it falls far short of the whole truth.

You realize that remarkable healings take place through medicine, and naturopathy, as well as through all the various religious bodies throughout the world, but all these healings are ultimately brought about through the spirit—the only healer there is. If you unquestionably believe it will work, it will. This is the cause of such confusion among scientists who ignore the spirit and look only to the physical realm for explanations. Their blindness has led them to confusion and sometimes outright denial of the evidence of the miraculous. Drug tests using placebos in test groups have shown that even using placebos many recover from their ailments. It is simply the result of belief.

Today people believe virtually everything their doctor tells them and I suspect that many have died and continue to die more from the negative reports and words spoken to them by these doctors than the disease or sickness itself, not to mention the actual toxic elements inherent in some medications they prescribe and the harsh treatments they employ. My wife's late uncle went to see his doctor about a bothersome mole on his hip. When he went, he was robust, healthy and strong. The doctor told him he had melanoma cancer and it was advanced. Her uncle accepted the doctor's pronouncement as true, went home, crawled into bed and waited to die. He did not even try to get well but simply gave up. Within a month of being confined to his bed he died. However, I want to clarify again here that I am not against medicine or surgery. These have and continue to prove very valuable in recovery from sickness and disease or accidents. What I am however saying is that modern medicine as we know it is only one factor and not the whole as is currently believed by most medical practitioners.

### **Widely Different Theories**

It would be tedious and unprofitable to discuss to any great extent the numerous theories advanced by different scientists, medical practitioners, religious sects and prayer therapy groups. There are a great number who claim that because their theory produces results it is, therefore, the correct one, and all others are false. This, as explained in this chapter, cannot be true.

The testimonies and stories of many people in years gone by and around the world prove that there are all types of healing. Franz Anton Mesmer, an Austrian physician who practised in Paris, discovered that by applying magnets to the diseased body, he could cure that disease miraculously. It is unclear as to why he tried it or believed that somehow it would work. He also performed cures with various other pieces of glass and metals. He later discontinued this form of healing and claimed that his cures were due to "animal magnetism," theorizing that this substance was projected from the healer to the patient. His method of treating disease from then on was by hypnotism, which was called mesmerism in his day. Other physicians said that all his healings were due to suggestion and nothing else. But the fact is they got healed. We need to stop

tripping over methods and instead focus on the essence of what produces the result we are seeking - namely healing in this case.

All these groups, such as psychiatrists, psychologists, naturopaths, physicians, and all the churches are using the one universal power resident in the spirit, even though some do not even understand why it works. Each may proclaim the healings are due to their theory or method. The process of all healing is a definite, positive, mental attitude, an inner attitude, or a way of thinking, called faith. Healing is due to a confident expectancy, which acts as a powerful suggestion to the spirit releasing its healing potency.

One man does not heal by a different power than another. It is true he may have his own theory or method. There is only one process of healing and that is faith. There is only one healing power, namely, God working through your spirit. Even Jesus employed numerous methods to heal people in his day. It was never the method, but the power released through faith. In one case he spat on the ground, then took the mud and placed it on the eyes of a blind man instructing him to go wash it off and he would see. I must admit it seemed to me like a rather bizarre method, but the result was a perfect healing. Select the theory and method you prefer if you will. You can rest assured, if you have faith, you will get results.

### **Views of Paracelsus**

Philippus Paracelsus, a famous Swiss alchemist and physician, who lived from 1493 to 1541, was a great healer in his day. He stated what is now an obvious scientific fact when he uttered these words, "Whether the object of your faith be real or false, you will nevertheless obtain the same effects. Thus, if I believed in Saint Peter's statue as I should have believed in Saint Peter himself, I shall obtain the same effects that I should have obtained from Saint Peter."

Faith, however, produces miracles; and whether it is true or false faith, it will always produce the same wonders." The views of Paracelsus were also entertained in the sixteenth century by Pietro Pomponazzi, an Italian philosopher and contemporary of Paracelsus, who said, "We can easily conceive the marvellous effects which confidence and imagination can produce, particularly when both qualities are reciprocated between the subjects and the person who influences them. The cures attributed to the influence of certain relics are the effect of their imagination and confidence of the patient and has nothing to do with any inherent power of the relic."

Quacks and philosophers know that if the bones of any skeleton were put in place of the saint's bones, the sick would none the less experience beneficial effects, if they believed that they were veritable relics." Then, if you believe in the bones of saints to heal, or if you believe in the healing power of certain



waters, you will get results because of the powerful suggestion given to your spirit. It is the latter that does the healing.

Peter Popoff is a man who currently sells miracle water. Regardless of how one feels about his pitch or claims, testimonies from many people suggest that some in and out of his church do in fact experience miracles - both in healings and finances. But again, I want to reiterate that it's not about the method but faith in the method that matters. The Catholic Church for years has purported that the taking of communion, reciting the rosary or being sprinkled with "holy water" will bring about miracles. Those who have believed these things have in fact experienced miracles. Again, the common denominator is faith, not the method.

### **Bernheim's Experiments**

Hippolyte Bernheim, professor of medicine at Nancy, France, 1910- 1919, was the expounder of the fact that the suggestion of the physician to the patient was exerted through the spirit. Bernheim, in his *Suggestive Therapeutics*, page 197, tells a story of a man with paralysis of the tongue which had yielded to no form of treatment. His doctor told the patient that he had a new instrument with which he promised to heal him. He introduced a pocket thermometer into the patient's mouth. The patient imagined it to be the instrument, which was to save him. In a few moments, he cried out joyfully that he could once more move his tongue freely.

"Among our cases," continues Bernheim, "facts of the same sort will be found. A young girl came into my office, having suffered from complete loss of speech for nearly four weeks. After making sure of the diagnosis, I told my students that loss of speech sometimes yielded instantly to electricity, which might act simply by its suggestive influence. I sent for the induction apparatus. I applied my hand over the larynx and moved a little, and said, 'Now you can speak aloud.' In an instant I made her say 'a,' then 'b,' then 'Maria.' She continued to speak distinctly; the loss of voice had disappeared." Here Bernheim is showing the power of faith and expectancy on the part of the patient, which acts as a powerful suggestion to the spirit. Of course, his confidence and assurance to the patient that they would receive healing also worked together to create the result.

Today doctors struggle with how to speak with their patients. Do you give them hope when you yourself do not really believe there is any hope? Sadly, most doctors base their expectations on the experience of others. But I would dare to say that if the doctor truly understood the power of faith and gave the patient a positive report in faith, the outcomes for many would be different. It is a huge responsibility. Being truthful or honest about the condition of the patient is appropriate yet to forecast the outcome is not necessarily truthful because who can truly know the future? A doctor can state the factual findings and diagnosis of the problem but if there is no hope given to the patient of recovery then I believe the doctor is doing a disservice to their patient. If the doctor seems

confident of recovery and communicates that to the patient, there is a greater likelihood the patient will believe it and in doing so will recover, regardless of how serious and life threatening the condition is.

### **The Cause of Bloody Stigmata**

In Hudson's Law of Psychic Phenomena, page 153, he states, "Hemorrhages and bloody stigmata may be induced in certain subjects by means of suggestion. "Dr. M. Bourru put a subject into the somnambulistic (blank mind) condition and gave him the following suggestion: 'At four o'clock this afternoon, after the hypnosis, you will come into my office, sit down in the armchair, cross your arms upon your breast, and your nose will begin to bleed.' At the hour appointed the young man did as directed. Several drops of blood came from the left nostril.

On another occasion, the same investigator traced the patient's name on both his forearms with the dull point of an instrument. Then when the patient was in the somnambulistic condition, he said, 'At four o'clock this afternoon you will go to sleep, and your arms will bleed along the lines which I have traced, and your name will appear written on your arms in letters of blood.' He was watched at four o'clock and seen to fall asleep. On the left arm the letters stood out in bright relief, and in several places, there were drops of blood. The letters were still visible three months afterwards, although they had gradually grown faint."

These facts demonstrate at once the correctness of the two fundamental propositions previously stated, namely, the constant amenability of the spirit to the power of suggestion and the perfect control, which the spirit exercises, over the functions, sensations, and conditions of the body.

All the foregoing phenomena dramatize vividly abnormal conditions induced by suggestion and are conclusive proof that *"as a man thinks in his heart [spirit] so is he"* Proverbs 23:7 and that *"all things are possible to them that believe"*. Mark 9:23

## **CHAPTER 6**

### **Principles of Healing**

Everyone is concerned with the healing of the body, financial security and prosperity. But what is it that heals or affects success? Where is this power? For years people have flocked to healing meetings held by renowned healers to find relief from their sicknesses and diseases. Many assume these men or women have these special healing gifts from God because they are very spiritual or holy. But has God chosen to only heal through these special healers or is healing available anytime, anywhere for anyone?

A.A. Allen was a man who is said to have procured many miracles of healing. Yet it was later learned that he was a helpless alcoholic and, in some cases, faked healings. In fact, he died because of alcohol poisoning. His ministry became discredited because of it though, because only Holy men should have such powers. That assumption of course was and is incorrect, because miracles can be performed by anyone if the subject believes they are able to heal them. As we have already seen, the answer is that this healing power is in the spirit of each person, and a changed mental attitude on the part of the sick person releases this healing power. The number of recorded healings by Jesus indicate that Jesus told them that it was their faith that had made them well. Along with the fake healings of A.A. Allen, many verified miraculous healings did occur.

No faith healer, mental or religious practitioner, psychologist, psychiatrist, or medical doctor ever healed a patient. Miraculous healing comes when a healer removes the mental blocks in the patient so that the healing principle may be released through the patient's spirit, restoring the patient to health.

As previously outlined, there are many different methods used to remove the mental, emotional, and physical blocks which inhibit the flow of the healing life principle in all of us. The healing principle resident in your spirit can and will, if properly directed by you or some other person, heal your mind and body of all disease. This healing principle is operative in all men regardless of creed, or race. You do not have to belong to some church in order to use and participate in this healing process. Your spirit will heal the burn or cut on your hand even though you profess to be an atheist or agnostic. Mind you most atheists and agnostics deny the spirit realm in favour of natural science and hence seldom experience for themselves anything miraculous. They are filled with unbelief (cynicism).

The modern mental therapeutic procedure is based on the truth that the power resident in your spirit responds according to your faith or what you believe deep down. Imagine the end desired and feel its reality; then the infinite power of God in you will respond to your conscious choice and your conscious request.

This is the meaning of “*believe you have received, and you shall receive*”. Mark 11:24. This is what the modern church minister does when he prays for the sick.  
“

*And when He had called unto Him His twelve disciples, He gave them power against unclean spirits, to cast them out, and to heal all manner of sickness and all manner of disease.” Matthew 10:1.* Jesus gave His disciples (those who follow Him), authority over demons and every imaginable sickness and disease. But it is still the “prayer of faith” that heals the sick, it is not automatic. I believe that we see relatively few miracles today because we have become disconnected from the spirit realm through natural science. Our education and knowledge of natural things has formed our new belief system (our paradigm or worldview) and now we trust only in doctors and natural science for the answers and explanations as to why things happen.

### **One Process of Healing**

When Adam and Eve sinned, the earth and all that is in it became cursed because of it. We still affect nature by our thoughts, attitudes and faith. The plant and animal kingdom however have no power to change themselves because although alive, only man had God breath into his nostrils imparting to him His spirit. Unlike the plant and animal kingdom, man is consciously aware of this life principle, and he can consciously direct it to bless himself and others including nature itself in countless ways. We see this illustrated time and again in the stories of the Bible. Daniel was unharmed by hungry lions, Shadrach, Meshach and Abednego were not harmed by fire. Jesus rebuked the wind and waves and they obeyed Him. Jesus walked on water as though it were solid ground. But we also see that when Adam and Eve sinned in the garden of Eden that the earth itself became cursed and resulted in the sudden appearance of thorns and thistles and although the Bible doesn't specifically say, I think mosquitoes and flies were also a part of that curse. Nature all around us is affected by the spirit of men either for good or evil. Interestingly, the animated movie, "The Lion King" graphically depicts how nature itself is affected by good or evil.

There are many different approaches, techniques, and methods in receiving healing, but there is only one process, which is faith, for according to your faith is it done unto you. And only mankind has been endowed with that ability.

### **The Law of Belief**

All religions of the world represent forms of belief, and these beliefs are explained in many ways. The law of life is belief. What do you believe about yourself, life, health or wealth? It is done unto you, as you believe.

Belief is a thought in your mind, which causes the power of your spirit to be distributed into all phases of your life according to your thinking habits. You

must realize the Bible is not talking about your belief in some method, ritual, ceremony, form, institution, man, or formula. It is talking about belief itself. You will note for example that Jesus employed numerous "methods" to cause healing in his subjects. It is NOT the method but the principle of faith. *If you can believe, all things are possible to him that believes. Mark 9:23.*

The struggle we all face is getting to the place of true belief – absolute mental certainty for something we really want. Unfortunately, it is much easier to think the worst or the negative. All your experiences, all your actions, and all the events and circumstances of your life are but the reflections and reactions to your own thought life. For example, my wife is terrified of flying insects and moths. Almost without exception, if there is a moth or flying insect in the area, they will fly into her. I could be sitting right next to her, yet almost never do they land on me. Why? Fear is negative faith, attracting to oneself all things associated to that fear. Negative attracts negative as positive attracts positive. This of course is why the concept of the “Law of attraction” was espoused. What you truly believe deep within your being will cause the material world around you to be affected bringing into your experience either positive or negative things.

### **Praying for Anything Requires a Conscious Deliberate Thought**

Prayer is the intelligent function of the conscious and spirit levels of mind specifically directed for a definite purpose. In prayer, you must know what specifically you are asking for and why you believe it will happen. A story is told of a man named Smith Wigglesworth who at one time was asked to attend the bedside of a woman who was at death's door. When he arrived, he found that her stomach had ruptured and there was a large opening in her flesh revealing her internal organs. There was a stench in the room, and it was a very difficult sight to behold. How do you pray for the healing of a woman in this condition? Smith said, "No man can pray on earth". In other words, he had to close his eyes and not look at the condition. Instead he focused his imagination on this woman being perfect and Jesus reaching down his hand to heal her. He thus prayed for her complete healing and when he opened his eyes, what he saw, was exactly what he had imagined in his mind and spirit as he prayed. She was miraculously whole.

Mr. Wigglesworth (1859-1947) was a remarkable man of faith. Smith would pray, and the blind would see, and the deaf were healed, people came out of wheelchairs, and cancers were destroyed. One remarkable story is when He prayed for a woman in a hospital. While he and a friend were praying, she died. He took her out of the bed stood her against the wall and said, "in the name of Jesus I rebuke this death". Her whole body began to tremble. Then he said, "in the name of Jesus walk", and she walked. Everywhere he would go he would teach and then show the power of God. He began to receive requests from all over the world. He taught in Europe, Asia, New Zealand and many other areas.

When the crowds became very large, he began a "wholesale healing". He would have everyone who needed healing lay hands on themselves and then he would pray. Hundreds would be healed at one time.

Over Smith's ministry it was confirmed that 14 people were raised from the dead. Thousands were saved and healed, and he impacted whole continents for Christ. Smith died on March 12, 1947 at the funeral of his dear friend Wilf Richardson. His ministry was based on four principles: " First, read the Word of God. Second, consume the Word of God until it consumes you. Third believe the Word of God. Fourth, act on the Word."

When you pray you must consciously and deliberately choose a certain idea, mental picture, or plan which you desire to experience. You realize your capacity to convey this idea or mental image to your spirit by feeling the reality of the state assumed. As you remain faithful in your mental attitude, your prayer will be answered. Prayer is a definite mental action for a definite specific purpose. It is not wishful thinking or begging but creative by seeing the result desired as already done.

Let us suppose that you decide to overcome a certain difficulty by prayer. You are aware that your problem or sickness, whatever it may be, must be caused by negative thoughts charged with fear and lodged in your spirit, and that if you can succeed in cleansing your mind of these thoughts, you will get what you desire. You, therefore, work to develop an image in your mind of yourself having what it is you desire - what that would look like or feel like, knowing that all things are possible through faith and that health, happiness, success and prosperity are yours for the taking. As you dwell on these thoughts, your fear will begin to dissolve. The deliberate replacement of negative thoughts of fear or hopelessness will affect your spirit and produce the result you have imagined and believed.

You give thanks for the result that you know is yours, and then you keep your mind off the difficulty. While you are praying, you absolutely refuse to give any power or attention to the negative conditions or to admit for a second that the healing will not come. This attitude of mind brings about the harmonious union of the conscious mind and spirit, which releases the healing power. Depending on your experience to believe, the results may be instant or take time as you build your spirit to believe and produce the result.

I call this "praying it forward". By visualizing the reality, you wish to experience, knowing that God has enabled you to receive everything you need through faith, you at once begin to give thanks for it. At first this will be rejected by your natural mind, but you must persist against all such thoughts or objections. This is the battlefield.

*1 Corinthians 2: 11-14 For what man knows the things of a man, except the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God no man knows, but the Spirit of God. Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the Spirit who is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teaches, but which the Holy Spirit teaches; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. But the natural man does not receive the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness to him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually perceived.*

Many Christians struggle with believing that everyone can be healed because they have seen many others who claimed to believe and yet died of their disease. They cannot understand why, so they resort to other beliefs or explanations such as "It is not always God's will to heal". This belief however is not taught in the new Testament. In fact, it says, "*by His stripes you were healed*". *1 Peter 2:24*. Notice the tense of this verse. It is past tense, meaning that healing has already been given through Jesus Christ. Prior to His death and resurrection, healing was not available to everyone, but since then it is. It is a spiritual reality that pre-existed the illness. So, we ought therefore to reject all sickness and disease mentally and reject every ache and pain or doctor's diagnosis by emphatically stating that we are healed and mentally rejecting any notion that we are in perfect health.

See yourself as whole. Visualize and grasp what that would be like. Give thanks for your healing and it will surely be yours. Remember however that if you say, "I believe I will be healed" then you are in a state of hope and not faith. Faith sees it already done NOW. It always speaks in the present tense. Many confuse hope for faith and that is why many never receive healing because they are hoping for a healing sometime in the future rather than declaring and seeing it now as a reality in their mind and spirit. Without certainty, there is no faith and without faith there is no miracle.

You therefore give thanks for what you believe HAS been granted to you through faith BEFORE it has manifested itself. Abraham the human father of faith spoken of in the Bible, believed he would have a son though his wife was barren, and he and she were well past childbearing years. The Bible says that Abraham's faith grew strong as he daily praised God for his miracle son. To help him, God changed his name from Abram to Abraham - meaning a father of many. Every time someone called him by that name it was a reminder that he was a father of many, not that he would be, but that he already was, though yet only in spirit. At the age of 100 and his wife 99 she conceived and gave birth to a son. Impossible? Of course, by natural law it was. But natural law can be changed or affected by the law of the spirit realm.

## **How Blind Faith Works**

The voodoo doctor or witch doctor in some parts of the world may heal by incantations, or touching the so-called bones of saints, or anything else to heal a person, which causes the patients to honestly believe in the method or process or special powers of the healer. Any method, which causes you to move from fear and worry to faith (certainty) and expectancy, will heal you.

There are many persons, each of whom claims that because his personal theory produces results, it is, therefore, the correct one. This, as already explained in this chapter, cannot be true. To illustrate how blind faith works: You will recall our discussion of the Swiss physician, Franz Anton Mesmer. In 1776 he claimed many cures when he stroked diseased bodies with artificial magnets. Even today people sell healing magnets proclaiming they really work – but it only does if you truly believe it will. The same applies to the use of crystals or pyramids. None of these things have any power to heal of themselves. Later, Mesmer threw away his magnets and evolved the theory of animal magnetism. This he held to be a fluid, which pervades the universe, but is most active in the human organism.

Mesmer claimed that this magnetic fluid, which was going forth from him to his patients, healed them. People flocked to him, and many wonderful cures were affected. Mesmer moved to Paris, and while there the Government appointed a commission composed of physicians and members of the Academy of Science, to investigate his cures. The report admitted the leading facts claimed by Mesmer but held that there was no evidence to prove the correctness of his magnetic fluid theory, and said the effects were due to the imagination of the patients.

Soon after this, Mesmer was driven into exile, and died in 1815. Shortly afterwards, Dr. Braid of Manchester undertook to show that magnetic fluid had nothing to do with the production of the healings of Dr. Mesmer. Dr. Braid discovered that patients could be thrown into hypnotic sleep by suggestion, during which many of the well-known phenomena ascribed to magnetism by Mesmer could be produced. It is due to Dr. Mesmer that the word "mesmerize" was adopted when referring to hypnotism.

You can readily see that all these cures were undoubtedly brought about by the active imagination of the patients together with a powerful suggestion of health to their spirits. All this could be termed blind faith, as there was no understanding in those days as to how the cures were brought about, and sadly even today there are few that understand this law of the spirit. Faith as already stated however, is blind to natural reality.

One very important point worth mentioning here is the generally accepted idea of imagination. Imagination is thought to be pure fantasy and have absolutely no substance. Imagination undirected and not linked with definiteness of purpose is



fantasy. However, when combined with deliberate intent and understanding that through imagination and faith, the thing imagined becomes a living and real thing, then it changes everything because it becomes a living active force. That which is deliberately conceived and imagined soon becomes manifested in the physical realm.

### **What About Fasting?**

There are many things taught about fasting as a method of gaining spiritual power or receiving answers to prayer. Sadly, most teachers focus on the method, and discussions are made about what constitutes a fast. What is a full or partial fast? Should you go away and be alone someplace when fasting? In modern times people have used this to get attention and effect change by government. These are often called "hunger strikes".

When seeking the freedom of India from the oppression of the British, Mahatma Gandhi, often fasted for long periods of time. In his emaciated state, he felt more spiritually alive and thus continued this practice. But was it his fasting that freed India from the British? No, it was not. It was in fact his faith that it would. Fasting only enabled him to quiet his natural mind so that he could focus his energy spiritually on the outcome he desired.

Once a person gets control of their natural physical needs, the natural mind and body, they are able more easily to tune into their spirit and thus access the realm of the spirit wherein is found the source of life. Many people have and continue to testify to miracles through fasting and purport that fasting is the answer when in fact it is simply a method of getting to faith. If fasting helps you believe, then by all means do it. If not, then it will produce nothing.

I have a cousin who as a young man was influenced by his pastor who taught that if you want the power of God in your life you should fast. Inspired by this man he embarked on a fast. Sadly, nothing happened, and, in his disillusionment, he turned away from serving God. He did not understand that the power of God was already in him and could be released at any time for anything simply through faith.

### **Healing at a Distance**

Suppose you learned that your mother was sick in Toronto and you lived in Vancouver. Your mother would not be physically present where you are, but you could pray for her. Faith is not bound by time or space. The physical limitations we experience in the natural are not a factor in the realm of the spirit. This is important to know because some people get hung up with having to be physically present to cause the healing of a loved one. This was first illustrated by the Centurion who sent his servants to Jesus to ask for healing for another servant – at a distance.

Through prayer and visualizing your mother as healed by use of your spirit, she will experience healing. Jesus sometimes healed "at a distance" based on the faith of those who sought healing for a loved one. But in most cases people found it difficult to believe unless Jesus touched them physically. Martha and Mary did not understand this when they had sent word to Jesus that their brother Lazarus was very sick and for Him to come. Jesus could have at a distance healed him. But they waited for Jesus to come and He delayed coming – long enough for Lazarus to die.

When Jesus did arrive on the scene, Mary said to Jesus, *"If only you had come sooner our brother would not have died."* John 11:21. But Jesus totally ignored it and said, *"I am the resurrection and the life"* John 11:25. He then did what seemed impossible since Lazarus was already dead for four days and was already rotting. Jesus proved He was the son of God and had power over death, by raising Lazarus from the dead. He did not doubt for a moment nor go into some long time of prayer and fasting. Instead He simply called Lazarus out of the grave. Lazarus being physically dead heard Him and came back to life. Instantly his rotting flesh was made perfect again and he came out of the tomb – alive and well. Jesus did not even lay a hand on the dead body, but simply spoke a word in faith.

In the spirit principle, there is no time or space. It is the same spirit that operates through your mother no matter where she may be. There is no absent treatment as opposed to present treatment for the power of God to heal is omnipresent. In modern times, many people have received miraculous healings after requesting prayer from well known evangelists who offer to pray for folks at a distance.

### **The Name Above All Names**

I strongly suggest that you cease talking about your ailments or giving them a name. The only sap from which they draw life is your attention and fear of them. Jesus has been given the name above all names – not just human names but also the name of any sickness or disease or any created thing. All will bow to His name, because He is Lord of all. Therefore, many prayers include "in the name of Jesus". I have observed miraculous healings where people have simply focused on Jesus and His love and healing attributes. They would in a prayerful way simply and deliberately say "Jesus" as they focused on Him.

If you are constantly naming your aches and symptoms, you inhibit faith, which prevents the release of the healing power and energy of your spirit. Furthermore, by the law of your own mind, these imaginings tend to take shape, as the thing I greatly feared (As Job experienced in the Bible.) Fill your mind with the great positive truths of life and walk forward in the light of love. God loves you and wants only the best for you. He does not send sickness, disease or poverty. All such negative experiences come from Satan and the world. *This is the victory that overcomes the world - our faith. 1 John 5:4*

## **The Power of a Dominant Thought**

The reason why many people fail to get what they desire in life is their focus. Each thought focused on a thing, is like a seed being sown, which will produce a harvest. If you worry about paying bills, worry about your children getting hurt, worry about your spouse being unfaithful, worry about your health and so on, you in fact are sowing seeds that will sooner or later bring to you exactly what you worried about.

When people experience what they worried about, they falsely conclude that they were right to worry since it did happen. No, the reason it happened is because they caused it by their worry and thoughts. What you believe deep down will happen. Dispel all negative thoughts and images. Dispel all fears and replace them with good thoughts, of health, wealth, peace, joy and wisdom and you will have what you truly believe and think about. But if someone can get you to focus on something negative, even though you do not wish to accept it, this becomes a dominant thought that through repetition affects your spirit and becomes a deep-seated belief in your spirit. This is known as the power of suggestion.

A story is told about a friendly golf game between world golfing champion, Arnold Palmer and a close friend. I cannot confirm how true the story is but based on what I know about dominant thought I would believe it. His friend must have understood something of psychology and how focus affects performance. So, from the first hole he started calling Arnold a "slicer". Inferring that Arnold would slice the ball. Of course, Arnold laughed at him and drove the ball straight down the fairway. Unimpressed, his friend simply said, "lucky shot", you slicer. This went on for almost half of the eighteen holes. Then the unthinkable happened. On the next hole Arnold once again took out his driver and proceeded to drive the ball down the fairway as he had previously - excepting this time he sliced the ball. His friend immediately said, see I told you that you were a slicer. What happened?

The principle employed by his friend is known as the "dominant thought" principle. What does that mean? Well simply stated, when words, thoughts or images are repeated long enough they will in fact become reality. Every word, thought or image is a seed sown. Arnold's friend by repeating the idea of slicing the ball to Arnold, became a dominant thought in his spirit mind and it resulted in a world champion doing the unimaginable - slicing the ball. There is no other explanation for this phenomenon.

When I was twenty-six years of age, I rode a big motorcycle (1,100 cc) to and from work in South Africa. I loved riding my motorcycle. Then inexplicably one day as I was riding to work, I had this sudden image flash into my mind of a motorcycle crash. Not being superstitious I simply shrugged it off and forgot

about it. For the next two weeks however, periodically and without warning once again I would see this image. Every time I merely shrugged it off like you would a bad dream but only after a few moments of contemplation about what that would be like.

Then one day I rode my motorcycle with my brother in law and a friend to a nearby dam where it was common for dozens of motorcyclists to go and have breakfast at a restaurant there. On my way back, I came around a sharp corner and my back wheel slipped on some gravel on the side of the road. In an instant, the image of the motorcycle crash I had seen flashed back and I froze in fear. This resulted in me plowing into the embankment in front of me and me flying over the handlebars. I was not seriously injured but my motorcycle did sustain some serious damage. Some people suggested it was a premonition, but I have come to see it was rather a self fulfilling "prophecy"

While I awaited the repairs to my motorcycle, I decided I would change my mental conditioning, having grasped the true cause of the accident. I thus began daily and frequently throughout the day to say, "I will never fall off this motorcycle again", until I truly believed it. Then the first day out after the repairs as I drove up to the paved road from my gravel road where I lived, a car came screaming around the corner right in front of me. I slammed on my brakes and the back tire began to slide out from underneath me. As it did, I felt myself falling but without any conscious thought, I was able to pull up this massive machine which I could not lift naturally, and when my senses caught up with me, I found myself gritting my teeth and saying out loud, " I will never fall off this motorcycle again". And up until the day I sold it I never came off my motorcycle again though I had one other close call.

Now the programming I put into my mind certainly gave me success over another crash. but the fact that I almost had another crash I believe was due to my statement, which was focusing on the words "falling off". It was a dominant thought and as such still affected my experience. This same effect happens to people we call accident prone or lucky.

One other story will serve to illustrate this and then I would like to apply the principle so that you can use it effectively. A famous speaker and writer by the name of Anthony Robbins shares his experience while learning to be a race car driver. The instructor warned him that at any time during the drive around the track he would pull on the hand break and send the car into a slide so be prepared.

Things were going well it seemed and, in his excitement, Anthony forgot about what the instructor had warned him. Then suddenly he slammed on the brake sending the car into a slide, heading straight for a brick wall. Anthony was panicked and while desperately trying to get control of the car kept focusing on

the wall as it came closer. In the meantime, his instructor yelled at him, "look to where you want to go". But it all happened so fast and before it was too late, the instructor took control of the steering wheel and barely avoided a crash into the wall. The lesson was simply this, pay no attention to what you are afraid of, but focus instead on the outcome you want. If your attention is focused on where you want to go instead of what could go wrong or is going wrong, you will get out safely, but if you focus on the wall, you make it a dominant thought which is negative. This then acts as a magnet to draw you to the very thing you are trying to avoid.

No wonder some people who hate their parents turn out just like them. That is why those who condemn others soon find themselves just as guilty of the things they judged others for.

### **Controlling Dominant Thoughts**

Hopefully the previous stories show you how our experiences are linked directly to our dominant thoughts. Simply put, whatever you focus on will become your reality even though the focus is intended to be avoidance.

Have you ever been around someone who keeps yawning? What happens to you and others? That's right, you soon find yourself either also yawning or you begin to feel tired. How about someone who keeps sneezing? Pretty soon your nose starts feeling itchy. My daughter starts to itch at the very mention of the word lice. She gets itchy as the result of a mere word that should have no such power, yet it does. And she is not alone either. Many people I know have the same experience.

If you are sick, the mention of the disease in any statement gives the disease power in your spirit and if mentioned frequently enough it will only feed the disease. Some people claim that this is denial and it could be, if that is where you stop. But the truth is that seeds must be planted of health and seeing oneself healthy and happy. Focusing instead on "where you want to go" and imagining it as being so, in due course will produce the desired result.

As long as you talk about your heart condition, the cancer, your diabetes, your allergies, your business failing, your debts or whatever, you are creating a dominant thought that will only cause the disease to prosper in your body or the problem to destroy you or your business. You feed it every time you acknowledge it, but as with all living things, when you stop feeding it, it will die. We need to feed our minds only with good things, *"whatsoever things are good, lovely and of good report, think on these things."* *Philippians 4:8*

If you want to be well, ignore the symptoms, and the diagnosis, and focus instead on health. In your mind imagine what that would look like and feel like.

See your body getting better and thank God for His divine power flowing through you to heal you.

What about finances? The same principle applies here. The dominant thought becomes the bills, the creditors and the lack of money to pay them. Even though you are trying desperately to make enough money to pay them off, you are sowing seeds of debt in your thinking thus producing an endless life of debt. Things keep going wrong, causing you to spend more money you do not have and pushing you even further into debt. Every time you say, "I can't afford it" you reinforce the dominant thought of debt or lack and thus you are the author of your own financial nightmare.

So, what ought you do or say when it comes to finances? Firstly, drop forever the statement "I can't afford". Instead you may want to start repeating, "I always have plenty of money because I always find ways to make more money."

You do not want to say that you are debt free, since that makes the dominant thought debt. Instead you want to sow positive words and thoughts because you can be debt free and still poor. So instead you will say that you have all the money you need for whatever you choose to purchase. Focusing instead on plenty will create an experience of plenty.

Research of the wealthy has confirmed that rich people all think rich. They never consider the possibility of lack or poverty. But let's not go too far out here. If you need a car and presently do not have the finances to purchase one, you would simply acknowledge that you will have the necessary finances soon to acquire the car you desire to own. Going out to borrow money is not faith. Through faith... if you believe, you can buy the car of your dreams cash. You also don't need a mortgage because you can buy the house of your dreams cash. How do I know? Because I have done it myself.

Don't think about what you can't do because of lack of money. Instead think positively of what you can do with what you have, knowing that more is on the way to you so there is no need to scrimp or be overly frugal. Be wise and not wasteful but don't take it to an extreme, otherwise you will accumulate wealth but never enjoy any of it and in the end leave it to someone else who likely will squander it.

This same principle can equally be applied to losing weight. Every time you use the word diet you are reinforcing in your spirit that you are fat. The dominant thought in your conscious mind is losing weight but in your spirit the message is, I am fat and need to focus on that. To overcome being overweight you need to ignore everything related to being overweight and instead focus on being healthy, strong and satisfied.

See yourself slim and imagine what that would feel like and what you could do. You really don't need the food you have been eating anyway. Maybe the real problem all along was self hate, or some personal injury as a child, rejection or even being molested. Most weight problems I believe are the result of a deeper mental and emotional problem. Fix that and you will fix the weight issue too, because over-eating is often a way to find pleasure in a world of hurt and stress. It is a way of controlling your pain or finding pleasure in a world of pain. Even bulimic and anorexia disorders are the fruit of a mental disorder – self rejection and fear of rejection.

The more you think about food, the more you will crave it and that is why most diets fail. Your body will simply do the unthinkable and it will cause you to gain weight on almost nothing. This leads you to give up, and soon you find that the weight you did lose has been gained back and sometimes you put on even more. Ignore diets and dieting and focus on health and satisfaction. When you start saying, " I don't eat chocolate because it is not healthy" or I feel so much better when I exercise". By making statements that pay attention to positive things, your appetite will change, and your body will lose the weight effortlessly.

It also depends on your value of self control. We have been taught to value pleasure and instant gratification and to devalue self control. This is a huge mental mistake that leads to sexual immorality and many sexually transmitted diseases. It also leads to being overweight through eating too much and leads many to rush into money making schemes that rob them of their money by appealing to their greed. All of these tragic things occur because we value instant gratification over self control. But the self-controlled person has more power and the pleasure they do enjoy from time to time is measured and enjoyed even more. Too much of a good thing soon loses its appeal leaving the pleasure seeker feeling empty inside and desperate to find something else to satisfy their craving for pleasure. I know that after I have fasted a while, food tastes even better. When I control my sexual desires, sex feels even better and seeking to help others rather than rush to getting rich has far more reward than quick wealth without personal effort and contribution.

## CHAPTER 7

### Practical Techniques to Grow Your Faith

*For out of the heart (spirit) springs forth all life forces. Proverbs 4:23.* This means that you need to know how to harness the power of your spirit and focus it on the outcome you desire.

#### **Thermostat or Thermometer?**

Too many people experience life as a thermometer. What I mean by that is the fact that they simply reflect their environment. They are easily influenced by fads, by the economy, by fashion and many other factors. In some cases, they feel they need to “fit in” or feel awkward by not conforming to what the crowd says is the thing to do. Their lives reflect what is going on around them. As a young man my father told me something that I never forgot, “son it takes a live fish to swim upstream. Any dead fish can go with the flow”. By that he encouraged me to choose my course regardless of what others thought or what everyone else was doing. He dared me to be strong and to be different. I remember on one occasion I was invited by a friend to attend an Amway convention. As it happened there was an unspoken dress code for men – black or dark navy jacket, tie and black dress shoes, but I was not aware of it. Inadvertently I chose to wear a bright blue jacket to the utter disdain of my friend. He was embarrassed although that was not my intention. I liked that jacket at the time.

Then as so often occurs with masses, the leaders would tell people what to do. Stand up, shake the hand of the person next to you, say this or that to them. Now don’t get me wrong I am not someone who likes being contrarian necessarily but neither do I react by what the crowd does or is told to do. If I think its dumb, I simply won’t do it and don’t really care what anyone thinks. I am confident in myself and don’t need the approval of the crowds or any person. So, throughout the convention I did not always do what the leaders said to do. My poor friend was so embarrassed, and I am sure wished he had never invited me. If I think or feel that something is good or right, then I will co-operate but if not, I will not simply because others are. I can be a fish that swims upstream – against the current.

So, then what does a thermostat do? It does not measure the temperature as a thermometer does – instead it sets the temperature. In other words, it controls the environment rather than reflect it. Which are you? Are you a thermostat or a thermometer? Do you set your own environment, decisions and course regardless of what everyone else is doing or do you conform because you feel stupid if you don’t or you fear rejection or ridicule from others if you don’t? Faith works like a thermostat. It sets the course and the environment; it does not reflect current conditions.



In every group of people, you will soon see who controls the conversation and directs the activities of the group. We call them leaders and leaders are thermostats. They control the conversations and the actions of a group. Strong leaders are able even to take control over other leaders in the group and influence them.

### **Deliberately Impregnating Your Spirit**

I once heard a man say he was “pregnant” with a dream. By that he meant that he was incubating his dream, visualizing it and believing it. What is your dream? Are you deliberately impregnating your spirit with the words you say, the images you conjure in your mind and your confession? As mentioned previously, if you are to get results then you must be deliberate in your mental conditioning. Just allowing random thoughts and images to flow through your mind while being hopeful for a better outcome will produce nothing but disappointment and frustration.

You must take control of your thoughts in a deliberate methodical way - rejecting vehemently all images or thoughts that do not line up with your desired result. Like being pregnant it may take a while of growth before the result is born, but as sure as the sun rises you will get what you have believed and allowed your mind to accept as reality. If, however you allow doubts to come back and you lose focus your answer will die and be aborted even as an unborn child in the womb who is not nourished, will die and be aborted. It is imperative that we keep declaring and believing until the result is achieved.

Bob Proctor, a world renown speaker on the power of belief states that it all began when he read the book. “Think and Grow Rich” by Napoleon Hill. Ever since then, he reads that book every day – repeatedly for years now. This sowing of his thoughts towards wealth has resulted in him becoming super wealthy while helping many others become millionaires too – by teaching them about the power of thought and how to use it. I would suggest that if you committed to reading this book daily and over and again, as you do deeper insight will begin and you will change the course of your life for the better. You will be healthy, wealthy and wise. Use this book as a deliberate way to keep your focus rather being distracted by the issues of life and soon forget what you have learned here.

### **Your Spirit Will Accept Your Blueprint**

If you were building a new home for yourself and family, you know that you would need to first have a blueprint for your home; and you would see to it that the builders conformed to the blueprint. You would watch the material and select only the best materials. What about your mental home and your mental blueprint for happiness and abundance? All your experiences and everything that enters your life depend upon the nature of the mental building blocks, which

you use in the construction of your mental home. If your blueprint is full of mental patterns of fear, worry, anxiety, or lack, and if you are despondent, doubtful, and cynical, then the texture of the mental material you are weaving into your mind will come forth as more frustration, anxiety, and limitation of all kinds. The most fundamental and the most far reaching activity in life is that which you build into your mentality every waking hour. Your thought is silent and invisible; nevertheless, it is real.

Create a new blueprint for your life. Focus your thoughts and imagination on your dreams. By dwelling upon these things and claiming them, your spirit will accept your blueprint and bring all these things to pass. But you must make a choice now to take action. Throughout my life I have observed that only when I made a firm commitment to do something, did the resources and circumstances come about to enable me to achieve it. Uncertainty results in lack of commitment which in turn causes people to easily give up when things don't seem to be working out. You must make a clear choice and commit to it no matter what may come.

### **Prayer and Expectation**

*Ask, and it will be given you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened unto you. Matthew 7:7.*

Here you are told you will receive that for which you ask. It will be opened to you when you knock, and you will find that for which you are searching. This teaching implies the definiteness of mental and spiritual laws. There is always a direct response from your spirit to your conscious thinking. If you ask for bread, you will not receive a stone, any more than if you planted corn you would get a wheat stalk growing from it.

You must ask believing, if you are to receive. Your mind moves from the thought to the thing. Unless there is first an image in the mind, it cannot move, for there would be nothing for it to move toward. Your prayer, which is your mental act must be accepted as an image in your mind before the power from your spirit will play upon it and make it productive. Your spirit needs something to work with – raw materials. These materials are your thoughts, your determination, your dreams. But it also works with negatively charged materials – fear, doubt, anxiety, anger, apathy and so on. Make sure the image of what you are asking for is very clear in every detail.

Some years ago, I was looking for some investment in one of my companies by a private investor. It was doubtful he would invest but for a week before our meeting I prayed that he would and visualized him writing me a cheque for the exact amount I was needing. I did this numerous times prior to the meeting, until I had peace deep inside about it. But it was not easy getting to that place mentally. When I met with him, I was confident he would invest. At first, he told me that he had decided not to invest. I heard him but could not believe what

he was saying because I had already decided he would invest. I carried on talking about my company and suddenly he stopped me and said, you know I think I have changed my mind. I will invest. However, he wanted to do a bank transfer of funds. That did not fit my vision or prayer and I hesitated mentally. Then without me saying a thing he suddenly said – oh forget it, I have a cheque in the car, and I will get it and just write you a cheque – which he did – exactly as I had prayed and envisioned. This was no co-incidence but a direct answer to my prayer and very clear vision.

As we have earlier stated, many people pray in unbelief. They are hopeful, they are begging God for something but in their heart or spirit there is no sense of assurance or certainty of the answer or outcome. Faith is ALWAYS certain of the outcome.

Some of the greatest faith healers in history were people who seemed fully assured or convinced of the outcome. They believed that whatever they asked of God they would receive. Yet for so many of the rest of us, the "prayer of faith" seems illusive. We try to believe, we struggle and struggle to hang on in hope that somehow God will suddenly appear, and everything will be well. In most cases however, we land up disappointed and disillusioned.

It is also interesting to note that someone can have faith for one thing and yet not another. The Bible story of Elijah and the prophets of Baal tells how he challenged them to call on their god to send fire from heaven and consume the sacrifice. They of course failed but Elijah didn't. Fire did fall as he called on his God and then he executed hundreds of the false prophets.

Then he hears that Queen Jezebel is out to kill him after what he did to her prophets and instead of bold faith, Elijah panics and runs for his life. He had faith to call fire from heaven in front of a great crowd yet has no faith in God to protect him when a queen threatens his life. Elijah was an ordinary man just like you or me and was not consistent, but he demonstrated more faith and miracles than most of us because in some things and from time to time, he did have bold faith. There is not a man alive including the author of this book who walks in faith one hundred percent of the time. Faith is an ongoing battle, but the victory is assured when we go on the offensive in faith.

If you are to receive anything you desire or pray for, you must reach a point of acceptance in your heart, an unqualified and undisputed state of peace that "it is done". This contemplation should be accompanied by a feeling of joy and peacefulness in foreseeing the certain accomplishment of your desire. The sound basis for answered prayer is your knowledge and complete confidence that the movement of your conscious mind will gain a definite response from your spirit, which is one with the boundless wisdom and infinite power of God.

By following this procedure, your prayers will be answered. *Whatever you ask in prayer believing you shall receive. Matthew 21:22.* There is nothing in this verse that is doubtful. Have you noticed; this verse says "whatever"? Does it really mean that? Yes, it does, so we need to get past the notion that God only answers certain requests or prayers. God is more loving than we ever imagined. *Now to Him that is able to do exceedingly abundantly more than all that we ask or think, according to the power that works in us. Ephesians 3:20.* He loves to go far beyond what we can even ask or think. He is a God of abundance and His desire for us is all of that and more.

A beautiful picture of God's love is illustrated in the story of the Prodigal son. *Luke 15:11-32.* When he returns, his father puts a ring on his finger, robes him in exquisite garments, kills the best calf in his stock and throws him the biggest party ever – this after he squandered his inheritance and brought shame on his family. How many of those things were needs? How much did this son deserve such treatment? Not at all. God is extravagant in all He does for those He loves, who come to Him in faith, despite past failures. It matters little where you have been. What matters is where you are headed now.

This story also has some other very interesting things for us to grasp. Note that the faithful son was infuriated and very angry with his father. He even accused his father of playing favourites. But his father said something quite significant. He pointed out to the older son that all that he had now belonged to him (the older son) and he could have at any time done whatever he wanted with it.

He was waiting for his father to do something when all the while, he could have enjoyed his inheritance anytime – he just didn't realize it. When God appears to perform miracles for some people, others feel like the older faithful son – God why did you answer their prayer but not mine? Please, please understand, that in Christ all things have been given to you as your inheritance in Christ NOW! Will you avail yourself of it and enjoy it? Its yours for the taking so take it and enjoy it.

If you ever take the time to study the description of heaven as written by the Apostle John in the book of Revelation. You will come to see that this place is constructed of pure gold and precious gems. If that is not "over the top" then I have no idea what is. Why would God do such a thing? Only because He loves us and created us to enjoy all these things, He created for us to enjoy. We are NOT beggars if we are indeed children of the King of Kings through faith in Jesus. This is not a license to be arrogant, nor is there a place for greed for we have been adopted into His kingdom and we have unlimited access to whatever we need whenever we need it. No need to hoard or be greedy. But we must retrain our minds that are still thinking like beggars.

God has given us many promises in the Bible as a basis of faith and belief. Yet many do not truly believe them nor reprogram their minds with these promises. Those who have, have experienced many wonderful things. The religious folks frown on their enthusiasm and in fact preach against "Word of Faith" believers as being selfish and materialistic people, and perhaps some are. But as many have come to truly believe the promises, they in turn have experienced their reality. Those who oppose such teaching never experience or enjoy all the benefits that are rightly theirs through Christ. The new covenant (new constitution) established by Jesus is one of blessing and freedom from sin and its effects. Those who fail to understand this will accept the lies of Satan and their own senses resulting in sickness, poverty and failure.

### **The Power of Visualization Or Imagination**

The easiest and most obvious way to formulate an idea is to visualize it, to see it in your "mind's eye" as vividly as if it were real. You can see with the natural eye only what already exists in the external world; in a similar way, that which you can visualize in your mind's eye already exists in the invisible realms of your mind and spirit. Every building, everything made by man was first an idea in the mind of someone - a dream or a vision as some call it.

Any picture, which you have in your mind, is *the substance of things hoped for and the evidence of things not seen (with the natural eye)*. Hebrews 11:1. What you form in your imagination is as real as any part of your body. The idea and the thought are real and will one day appear in your objective world if you are faithful to your mental image. This process of thinking forms impressions in your mind; these impressions in turn become manifested as facts and experiences in your life.

A story is told by Pastor Yonggi Cho, who pastors the largest church in the world in South Korea. He relates how he at one time needed a new desk. As he prayed, he felt the Lord asking him to be more specific as to what kind of desk he desired. So, he thought about it and in his mind began to see this desk in his office. He never told anyone about it but each time he prayed; he visualized this desk. And of course, in a few weeks someone out of the blue approached him saying he felt he wanted to give him a new desk. And yes, of course it was the exact desk he had been visualizing. Dr Cho also stated that he did the same with church growth. As he prayed for the church to grow, he felt compelled to be specific about how much growth he desired. As he visualized it and prayed, it happened without fail, exactly as he had prayed and envisioned.

Many people testify that they have used actual photos of their desires and placed them in a conspicuous place to remind them of their desire. As they have affirmed their belief that those images represented what they owned (even though yet, they did not), they in due course reaped what they sowed. There is

nothing mystical about this, though some have tried to make it so. Imagination is not an occult gift but a gift from God for our benefit.

I had an experience like that years ago when I first moved to South Africa. I had no credit, no money and no car and desperately needed one. Somehow, I came into possession of a match box which had a picture of the then brand-new VW Jetta. It was green in colour. At first, I said facetiously that it was my car. Every time I looked at the matchbox, I would reaffirm that.

Then one day my brother asked me to go with him to a car dealership because he needed to trade in his very old VW Beetle. So, I did. While there, the salesman asked me if I wanted to also purchase a car. I chuckled and said "yes" I would, but I had no credit and my job was commission sales only. He nevertheless persuaded me to at least try and asked me what I wanted. As it happened, just outside his office in the showroom was a brand-new Jetta - green in colour. So, I pointed to it and said - "that one". We filled in an application and twenty minutes later was told it was mine. My brother was shocked because he had credit and a trade in and yet was not able to get something like I just got. His conclusion was that I was very lucky. But luck had nothing to do with it. For months I had been saying "that is my car" and somehow, miraculously it became mine. I just didn't have the faith to make it mine without debt at the time, because I had not consciously prayed and believed for that car to be mine debt free.

If you have difficulty in visualizing something you desire, then find a picture of what it is you desire and place it in a prominent place where you can see it daily. Each time you see it, take a moment to say with as much sincerity as you can muster - that is mine and thank God for making it yours. Then close your eyes and try to imagine what it will feel like to have that possession. I guarantee you that if you faithfully sow these seeds, you will reap what you have sown. It is inevitable.

Dr. Joseph Murphy shares the following story. "A number of years ago I was in the Middle West lecturing in several states, and I desired to have a permanent location in the general area from which I could serve those who desired help. I travelled far, but the desire did not leave my mind. One evening, while in a hotel in Spokane, Washington, I relaxed completely on a couch, immobilized my attention, and in a quiet, passive manner imagined that I was talking to a large audience, saying in effect, "I am glad to be here; I have prayed for the ideal opportunity." I saw in my mind's eye the imaginary audience, and I felt the reality of it all. I played the role of the actor, dramatized this mental movie, and felt satisfied that this picture was being conveyed to my spirit, which would bring it to pass in its own way.

The next morning, on awakening, I felt a great sense of peace and satisfaction, and in a few days' time I received a telegram asking me to take over an organization in the Midwest, which I did, and I enjoyed it immensely for several years. The method outlined here appeals to many who have described it as "the mental movie method." You've got to see it to believe it - but see it with the eye of your mind.

As you can see by this man's experience, this same principle can be applied to buying or selling a property. I suggest to those who have homes or property for sale that you satisfy yourself in your own mind that the price is right. Then, claim that your spirit is attracting to you the buyer who really wants to have the property and who will love it and prosper in it. After having done this I suggest that you quiet your mind, and picture the cheque in your hands, rejoice in the cheque, give thanks for the cheque, and go off to sleep feeling the naturalness of the whole mental movie created in your own mind. You must act as though it were an objective reality, and the spirit will take it as an impression, and through the mysterious working of the spirit the buyer and the seller are brought together. A mental picture held in the mind, backed by faith, will come to pass as sure as the sun will rise in the morning.

### **The Thanksgiving & Praise Approach**

In the Bible, Paul recommends that we *make known our requests with praise and thanksgiving. Philippians 4:6*. Some extraordinary results follow this simple method of prayer. The thankful heart is always close to the creative forces of God. Merlin Carothers in his books on praise shares many miraculous stories of people who began to praise God in their difficult situations. In doing so, they soon began to see God as bigger than their problem and soon faith arose in them and miracles happened.

Let me illustrate this another way. A father promises his son a car for graduation; the boy has not yet received the car, but he is very thankful and happy, and is as joyous as though he had already received the car. He knows his father will fulfill his promise, and he is full of gratitude and joy even though he has not yet received the car, objectively speaking. He is so confident in his father he tells everyone about his new car and that is all he thinks about and talks about. If we were to truly believe God's promises this way by envisioning our desire or prayer fulfilled then simply daily praising and thanking God for it, we will have what we have asked for - No question about it.

This is "praying it forward". You ask in prayer then believe you have been granted what you asked for and thereafter spend your days praising God and being thankful for receiving what you asked for BEFORE it manifests. Praying it forward is simply thanking God for your miracle before it happens.

### **The Power of Affirmation**

In years gone by many hymn writers wrote hymns of affirmation. These beloved hymns gave strength and faith to those who sang them because it built up their spirits and thus their faith. Sadly, today very few songwriters write such songs.

The effectiveness of an affirmation is determined largely by your understanding of the truth and the meaning back of the words. Jesus said, "*In praying use not vain repetition.*" *Matthew 6:7*. Therefore, the power of your affirmation lies in the intelligent application of definite and specific statements. It is not just repeating something over and over as some teach – usually known as mantras. No, it is deliberate, visualized and directed statements of affirmation involving the emotions that cause our spirit to respond.

It is abnormal to be sick; it is normal to be healthy. Health is the truth of your being, because God created you that way. It was the curse of sin that brought sickness into the world and Jesus died to redeem us from the curse. It is abnormal to be poor. Fruitfulness and prosperity is the truth and reality. It has been God's way from the beginning. When you affirm health, prosperity, harmony, and peace for yourself or another, and when you realize these are universal principles of your own being when you have repented of your sin and trusted in Jesus, you will rearrange the negative patterns of your spirit based on your faith and understanding of that which you affirm. The result of the affirmative process of prayer depends on your conforming to the principles of life, regardless of appearances.

Declarations or affirmations are therefore statements of faith and to be effective we simply focus on the positive outcome desired and see it in our "mind's eye" as a fact. Once visualized, we accept it as fact and begin to give thanks to God for the outworking of what we visualized. Once the spirit of the person accepts this as the new reality, there is peace and assurance that "it is done".

To affirm is to state that it is so, and as you maintain this attitude of mind as true, regardless of all evidence to the contrary, you will receive an answer to your "prayer". Your thought can only affirm, for even if you deny something, you are affirming the presence of what you deny. You cannot focus on the problem but rather the desired outcome.

Repeating an affirmation, knowing what you are saying and why you are saying it, leads the mind to that state of consciousness where it accepts that which you state as true. Keep on affirming what you desired of God until your spirit accepts it, and you will receive what you believed God for. This works 100% of the time although it takes either a short time or long period depending on how much mind conditioning is necessary for each person.

### **Focusing on God's Attributes**



Many people throughout the world practice this form of “treatment” with wonderful results. The person using this method silently thinks of God and His qualities and attributes, such as, God is good, loving, kind, gentle, generous, all powerful, all knowing, wisdom personified and much more. To the Jews God revealed Himself as God our provider, God our healer and many other terms illustrating His character.

As you quietly think along these lines you will be lifted in your consciousness into a new spiritual plane, at which time you will begin to feel the infinite ocean of God’s love for you and hence can rest assured that He has granted you what you have asked for. Your eyes are now on the solution to whatever your need is instead of the need or problem facing you.

To the degree that we rise in consciousness of who God is and by contemplating His qualities and attributes, we generate faith through peace, knowing of a certainty that it is done. Many remarkable healings follow this type of prayer. Through this method, we see a God who is greater than our problem and we invite His power and essence to become our experience. Experiencing thus the presence of God results in miraculous things happening. The Bible says, “*But you are holy, O you that inhabits the praises of Israel.*” *Psalm 22:3*. As we praise Him for who He is He draws near to us and His presence results in miracles.

Kathryn Kuhlman (May 9, 1907 – February 20, 1976) was a lady who had a remarkable ministry along these lines. She would lead her congregation into worship of God, getting people through song, to focus on God’s attributes and to get caught up in thoughts about Him. Then she would simply begin to pronounce healings of various sorts for people in the audience. Testimonies abounded of divine healings taking place while people were focused on and worshipping God. She also spent hours before every meeting in worship visualizing the congregation worshipping and seeing people healed. By the time she came onto the stage she was ready and expecting miracles to take place.

### **The Decree Method**

Power goes into our word according to the feeling and faith behind it. There is a lot of teaching these days about the power of words. Words themselves however have no power other than the power we give them through how we feel and respond to those words. Of course, repetition of those words can cause a dominant thought and thereby affect us too. When we realize the power that moves the world is moving on our behalf and is backing up our word, our confidence and assurance grow.

This method is also what Jesus referred to when he said, “*say to this mountain, be removed and cast into the sea.*” *Matthew 21:21*. It is a declaration spoken with authority and faith. You will note if you read through the gospels that Jesus

himself practised this method. He never prayed for anyone to be healed. He simply declared and decreed their healing. When caught in a fierce storm he did not pray that God would deliver them from the storm or even protect them. No, instead, He rebuked the winds and the waves, and they obeyed Him. Why? Because Jesus believed that whatever He said would happen and so it did. Faith always takes control. Now I know some reading this will say “but He was God incarnate so He could do that”, inferring that we cannot. I would like to therefore draw your attention to something Jesus said to His disciples before He ascended to heaven, “*Whoever believes in Me will do the things that I have been doing, and greater than these because I am going to the Father*” John 14:12. So why do we not see this today? We almost never even see people doing the kinds of things Jesus did, though I have read reports that some have performed similar miracles. But even greater? It is time to stop with the excuses for failure and believe for the impossible. I dare you!

One final thought here is that after Jesus rebuked the winds and waves, he then rebuked his disciples for their lack of faith. They were still like children depending on Jesus to do everything for them not understanding that by faith they had the power to do it themselves. That is why even though they saw so many miracles performed by Jesus they still had no faith in themselves to overcome any adversity. There is a verse in the bible that says, “..... *for without me you can do nothing*”. John 15:5. The context of this verse is Jesus saying He is the vine and we are the branches.

If you carefully consider the metaphor you will realize that the main vine does not produce fruit itself. It provides the nutrients to the branches who in turn bear the fruit. It is through us that the fruit of miracles is to occur, but never forget that the resources to do so come from the stem – from Jesus Himself. It is our working together with Him that produces miracles – but they are by our hand and choice.

## CHAPTER 8

### Meditation

This term is often used in society today and appears to be something promoted primarily through eastern religions such as Buddhism or Hinduism. The practice of meditation has taken on numerous forms and appears to have different meanings depending on the type of meditation practised.

Meditation is mentioned several times in the Old Testament of the Bible and most often people assume it means to “deeply think about and focus on something”. But a look at the Hebrew word translated as Meditate appears to involve a whole lot more than that. Here is the definition according to Strong’s Concordance;

“Hagah”: to moan, growl, utter, speak, muse. It appears that the practice of meditation involves something vocal and not merely thought. Like muttering to oneself something. The notion of “speaking to yourself” is something we may refer to as odd or something a mentally ill person may practice but the reality is everyone from time to time talks to themselves. This is in fact normal and ought to be deliberately directed. By that I mean that what you say to yourself has the power to impact your consciousness and your spirit. We spoke earlier about the principle of dominant thought and confessions. By speaking such things to ourselves out loud or silently, we reinforce them to our spirit and they will impact our lives. King David suggested that if we meditate upon the precepts and laws of God, we will be prosperous in all our ways.

*I will meditate on your precepts and fix my eyes on your ways. Psalm 119:15.* The Psalmist practised meditation and other verses suggest it was usually at night – but not always. It is at this time of day when the business of life and duties end that we can focus better on our thoughts and thus meditation which is the last thing done before sleeping will sink deep into the human spirit and change the course of life depending on what those mutterings and thoughts were.

#### **Types of Meditation**

Meditation is practised universally by many religions. The practice of speaking a word or phrase is often referred to as a Mantra. The purpose of a mantra is diverse though and could be to generate peace of mind or a calling out to some deity. The most basic mantra used is “Om”, which in Hinduism is known as the "pranava mantra," the source of all mantras. The Hindu philosophy behind this is the premise that before existence and beyond existence is only One reality, Brahma, and the first manifestation of Brahma expressed as “Om”. This would equate to the Jew repeating the name of Jehovah. However, Jews in ancient history considered this name most sacred, so much so that they would not utter it. For the modern Christian, this would be like repeating the name of Jesus. The

repetition of the name of a deity is thought to evoke the presence and power of that deity. It thereby becomes a form of worship of that deity. While repeating the name, thoughts concerning the character of the deity are thought to bring peace, strength and faith.

Guided meditation is practised in many western world countries too. It can be as benign as a visualization exercise to cause the participants to focus on something that would make them feel good and relaxed. Some teachers in fact have used it as a means of helping students to release tension. This may involve the suggestion of becoming aware of various parts of your body and mentally relaxing the muscles or it could be focusing on breathing. In some cases, it involves a visual image of being on a beach, feeling the warm sun, listening to the waves roll, nobody is on the beach, you are alone enjoying every detail of the scene. But whether guided by someone or by yourself, the point is learning to focus on something to the exclusion of your surroundings and current conditions. Meditation therefore is a very important practice of mental self mastery and should be a part of your everyday behaviour. Self guided meditating however is more difficult to do simply because our minds are so unruly and easily distracted. This is why some have used abstract images to concentrate on as a means of blocking out all the “noise” of their own thoughts and surroundings. But this form in my opinion is dangerous – never try to empty your mind but rather fill it with something that will be positive.

### **Transcendental Meditation (TM)**

There is also a specific form of silent mantra meditation called the Transcendental Meditation technique. Maharishi Mahesh Yogi (1918–2008) introduced the TM technique and TM movement in India, in the mid-1950s.

The Maharishi taught thousands of people during a series of world tours from 1958 to 1965, expressing his teachings in spiritual and religious terms. TM became more popular in the 1960s and 1970s, as the Maharishi shifted to a more technical presentation, and his meditation technique was practised by celebrities. At this time, he began training TM teachers and created specialized organizations to present TM to specific segments of the population such as businesspeople and students. By the early 2000s, TM had been taught to millions of people, and the worldwide TM organization had grown to include educational programs, health products, and related services.

The TM technique involves the use of a sound or mantra and is practised for 15–20 minutes twice per day. It is taught by certified teachers through a standard course of instruction, which costs a fee that varies by country. According to the Transcendental Meditation movement, it is a non-religious method for relaxation, stress reduction, and self-development. Varying views on whether the technique is religious or non-religious have been expressed including by

sociologists, scholars, and a New Jersey court. The United States Court of Appeals upheld the federal ruling that TM was a religion and therefore could not be taught in public schools.

TM is one of the most widely practised and researched meditation techniques. It is impossible to say whether it has any effect on health, as the research to date is of poor quality. (ref. Wikipedia)

Definitions attributed to Meditation in the Free Dictionary state the following;

1.

a. To train, calm, or empty the mind, often by achieving an altered state, as by focusing on a single object, especially as a form of religious practice in Buddhism or Hinduism.

b. To engage in focused thought on scriptural passages or on particular doctrines or mysteries of a religion, especially Christianity.

c. To engage in devotional contemplation, especially prayer.

2. To think or reflect, especially in a calm and deliberate manner.

I have come to conclude that the practice of meditation is nothing more than a practice of training the mind to focus on something and in doing so to affect the subconscious or spirit of the person practising it. It has evolved into a religious practice most likely because of the “magical powers” meditation is thought to evoke. Each religion credits such experiences with their own deity.

Personally, I think we need to demystify meditation and recognize that it is really nothing more than repeating something in order to focus and in focusing to effect one’s life. In the previous chapter, we referred to a technique of praise and thanksgiving. This is what meditation can be. But it can also be a declaration which when repeated with emotion and visualization will cause whatever is declared to come to pass. As with fasting, these practices are merely a method employed to help us focus on something long enough and without distraction as to gain peace or whatever is desired of the practitioner.

The practice of meditation is not in itself wrong – in fact it is very good but be careful how you practice it. If you use it to focus on your desire, then it can be very useful and profitable but mindless chanting is dangerous and should be avoided. If you are a Christian, I would highly suggest you do not practice the use of “om” which is in fact calling on a deity (demon) not from God. There is only one name we are permitted to use and that’s the name of Jesus.

I would also like to address one other thing here. In some circles the name of Jesus has become contentious by those who insist that the name Jesus is incorrect, and it should in stead be Yeshua. While correct in the Hebrew language it in no way negates those who use the English version of Jesus. I have never yet had a demon argue that point or refuse to leave because the name of

Jesus was used as the authority to cast them out. *“Keep reminding God’s people of these things. Warn them before God against quarreling about words; it is of no value, and only ruins those who listen.”* 2 Timothy 2:14

### **Spiritism & the Miraculous**

There is another aspect to the miraculous that needs addressing and that has to do with occult practices. The fact that strange and miraculous things happen sometimes, quite apart from the principles of faith we have been discussing is abundantly clear with much evidence of their effects. Curses, hexes, Voodoo, fortune telling etc. are practiced around the world with startling results. This has led many into the practices of witchcraft. Even today we are fascinated by magic and the supernatural and our superheroes are all “gifted” and have amazing powers to conjure things or cause damage to others. In many parts of the world people seeking revenge will go to a witchdoctor to put a curse on someone. Satan loves these practices because he loves to kill, hurt and destroy humans. But at times he will resort to “good deeds” in order to deceive.

So how do we know the difference, and does it really matter? For example, there are some people who claim to have a “gift” of clairvoyance and are able to, for example, help police locate missing persons, pets or dead bodies. How is that not a good thing? Not all occultic practices are clearly evil or negative. Not all are geared to curses on others. This has resulted in some calling themselves “white witches”, meaning they practice only good witchcraft. So how do we deal with these things?

It is my belief that there are clearly 2 spiritual realms. By that I mean there are 2 distinct spiritual forces that influence us and are connected to us through our own spirit. The kingdom of light is the kingdom of Jesus Christ while the kingdom of darkness is ruled by Satan. But Satan is called the great deceiver and as such sometimes masquerades as light. *2 Corinthians 11:14 says, “Satan himself masquerades as an angel of light.”*

What that means is that at times he comes across as good, doing good or promoting good for the sole purpose of deception, not because any good exists in him. According to the Bible, Satan is described as *“He was a murderer from the beginning, and did not abide in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaks a lie, he speaks of his own, for he is a liar and the father of it.”* John 8:44

As we know lies are a method of convincing someone of something that is not true as being the truth. If something were clearly a lie nobody would ever be deceived. So, the problem is that we cannot judge the effects of something as the sole basis for determining the source of the power. It is true that both sources produce miraculous effects. One is more often evil but not always. The other is always good. There is a story in the New Testament that helps us understand this.

The story is found in the book of Acts Chapter 16:16-24

*One day as we were going to the place of prayer, we were met by a slave girl with a spirit of clairvoyance who earned a lot of money for her masters by fortune-telling. This girl followed Paul and the rest of us, shouting, “These men are servants of the Most High God, who are proclaiming to you the way of salvation.”*

*She did this for many days. Eventually Paul grew aggravated by it and turned and said to the spirit, “In the name of Jesus Christ I command you to come out of her!” And the spirit left her right away.*

*When the girl’s owners saw that their hope of making any more money through her was gone, they seized Paul and Silas and dragged them before the authorities in the marketplace. They brought them to the magistrates and said, “These men are Jews and are causing turmoil in our city by promoting things that are unlawful for us Romans to adopt or practice.”*

*The crowd joined in the attack against Paul and Silas, and the magistrates ordered that they be stripped and beaten with rods. And after beating them with many blows, they threw them into prison and ordered the jailer to guard them securely. On receiving this order, he placed them in the inner cell and fastened their feet in the stocks.*

I have underlined some key points in these verses that I would like to take note of. The first point is that the ability this girl had, or “gift” of clairvoyance, was an enablement given her by a spirit being. It was not of herself nor a natural ability. This is important to understand. Obviously, she was pretty accurate in her divinations which is why she made so much money for her owners. This practice is strictly forbidden by God and when not of God is usually always for the purpose of making money. Prophets of old were forbidden to take even gifts for their prophecies because it would corrupt the prophecies and could be used instead to manipulate and control people. Those who believe what any fortune teller tells them are foolish despite how accurate they may be on some things – things that would convince you to believe everything they say. My ex wife visited such a fortune teller when she was considering divorcing me. This fortune teller worked for the police to locate missing pets and people and was pretty accurate most of the time. She told my wife to divorce me but not to worry because I would soon meet a blonde lady who I would marry, and all would be well. I did get remarried but to a brunette and have been happily married to her for 26 years now. Some things she told her were in fact pretty accurate and she in turn swallowed everything.

The second thing I would like to draw your attention to in the above verses is what this clairvoyant said about these disciples of Jesus – *“These are the men of God which show unto us the way of salvation.”* Was she right? She most

certainly was, and I would think that people would then flock to listen to these disciples since they must be men of God showing them how to be saved. Isn't that after all what their message was? How could this be wrong? Why would an evil spirit influence this servant girl to say something that was obviously true and in fact harmful to Satan's kingdom? How could anyone possibly think she was speaking under the influence of an evil spirit? It was in fact one of those times that Satan was appearing as an angel of light to deceive everyone. You see, she herself was not a follower of Jesus and neither did she seek after these men to hear the gospel of salvation message they preached. But many who heard her, like my ex-wife, might have concluded that everything she spoke was true and thus use it as an opportunity to control people and lead them astray.

We then see that this servant girl did this day after day and the monotony became evident to Paul that she was by no means speaking by the Spirit of God but by an evil spirit. He also knew she was a fortune teller so in Paul's mind she was obviously being used by this fortune telling spirit. So, Paul turned to her, but spoke directly to the spirit that inhabited her and commanded it to come out of her in the name of Jesus Christ. Since all spirits good and evil are subject to Jesus, they had no choice but to obey so the spirit came out of her. Instantly this girl lost all ability to be clairvoyant or to tell fortunes. This clearly demonstrated that this so called "gift" was not natural nor a gift of God but in fact a demon inhabiting her. Demons know the past and some of the future, so it is not hard for them to tell you about your past or present quite accurately.

The servant girl's owners when they realized what had happened were furious – after all they just lost a fortune and when it comes to money anything goes for many people. They went to the government with their complaint and had Paul and Silas beaten badly then thrown into the innermost dungeon in the prison for doing such a thing. They really didn't care that an evil spirit had inhabited this girl and given her the fortune telling abilities she had. It was for them, all about the money.

All fortune telling and clairvoyant practices are inspired by spirits of the kingdom of darkness and we are warned to stay away from any practice that purports to tell you your fortune. These include such things as Ouija boards, horoscopes, palm or tea-cup readings, or calling up the spirits of the dead (which is impossible by the way – but demons can easily masquerade as the departed dead). People who practice such things are often referred to as mediums. Also forbidden are any forms of divination or seeking or observing omens as guides – this is superstition and have their foundation in the kingdom of darkness. Included are the taking of magic potions or hallucinogenic drugs, often used by Shamans and witch doctors. Good luck charms and the like are pure superstition and therefore occult in origin. These too must be avoided unless we want to be deceived and ultimately destroyed by the chief deceiver, Satan, whose only goal



is to turn everyone against Jesus Christ and ruin their lives and ultimately to kill them.

The following passage of the Bible spells it out pretty clearly for us.

*Deuteronomy 18:10,11. Let no one be found among you who sacrifices their son or daughter in the fire, who practices divination or sorcery, interprets omens, engages in witchcraft, or casts spells, or who is a medium or spiritist or who consults the dead.*

## CHAPTER 9

### Hurdles to Faith

The principle reasons for failure in controlling our thoughts and our lives are: Lack of patience, confidence and trying to force the result. We live in an instant world and as a result one trait that is lacking in many is patience. We see impatience played out daily in traffic, at work, with the kids and sometimes with our spouses. So, when nothing happens right away, we are quick to throw it away and discard it as useless. Patient endurance is critical with determination not apathy. *“Be joyful, my brothers and sisters, whenever you face trials of all kinds, you know that the testing of your faith produces perseverance. Let perseverance finish its work so that you may be mature and complete, not lacking anything”.* James 1:2-4. Being patient is not just sitting around waiting for something to happen. It is creative, active, focused and determined, regardless of how long it might take. The question is, how badly do want it?

So often people pray but not in faith, then become disillusioned and confused. A prayer of faith is not possible when it is one of begging God or coming from a place of fear, doubt or terror. None of these exhibit certainty and peace which are indicators of true faith. Also, when you are focused on the health, financial or relational problem you make it worse because you are feeding it. You MUST look with your “mind’s eye” to what you really want it to look like and focus on that instead of the current situation or problem.

Sometimes despite a wrong mindset however, miracles have happened. How do we explain this? I believe that the principle of Grace is at work in situations like this. Therefore, proponents of Karma, are sometimes wrong. Sometimes good things do happen to bad people and bad things happen to good people. If we always received what we deserved, we would be in a lot worse shape than we find ourselves. *“Now there were some present at that time who told Jesus about the Galileans whose blood Pilate had mixed with their sacrifices. Jesus answered, “Do you think that these Galileans were worse sinners than all the other Galileans because they suffered this way? I tell you, no! But unless you repent, you too will all perish. Or those eighteen who died when the tower in Siloam fell on them—do you think they were more guilty than all the others living in Jerusalem? I tell you, no! But unless you repent, you too will all perish.”* Luke 13:1-5. We are all guilty and worthy of death, but by God’s grace many are still alive and have hope. Unrepented sin will always bring death which is why it is critical that by faith we repent of our sinful ways – which includes unbelief.

It is however, the principle of God's divine grace (unmerited favour) that is often at work in situations like this. Through grace, we come to see a loving God who wants to favour us despite ourselves. Jesus himself died for the benefit of the very people who crucified Him and still do so to this day mentally and verbally.

How or why grace is extended to one and not another is hard to know, but I have observed that frequently those who are new to faith tend to experience this because they are still ignorant of the truth – like babes. But as knowledge increases and maturity begins, more is expected of us to walk in faith and thereby make things happen by faith ourselves.

But all too often people try to rely on grace and not faith. The disciples saw Jesus perform miracles every day yet they themselves had little faith. Hard to believe isn't it? But think about it. They certainly believed Jesus could do miracles, (just like you do) but they had no faith that they could. Jesus rebuked them for their lack of faith on several occasions. Grace is appropriate for the ignorant or mentally immature. The trouble is many assume this will continue and be the norm. But we are expected to grow up and learn to take control ourselves. God expects the same thing of us. The transition of growth is sometimes hard and confusing because so many people don't understand this. Instead of God always coming to our rescue, He expects us to take control as mature believers. It is time to feed ourselves, clean ourselves and provide for ourselves. He has already given us everything we need to do this.

The right answer is inevitable when your thoughts are positive, constructive, and loving. From this, it is perfectly obvious that the only thing you must do in order to overcome failure is to get your spirit to accept your idea or request by feeling its reality now, and the law of faith will do the rest. Turn over your request to God with faith and confidence, and He will answer.

### **Lack of Confidence**

Confidence is not something we are born with. It comes through trial and success. The more we are successful the more confident we become. Faith grows through experience. We commence by believing for the small things – things we can believe possible and through success we become bolder and dare to believe for even greater things. Confidence is complete inward assurance of something. A confident person walks with their head held high and a spring in their step. They are sure that things are getting better and look for and expect miracles every day. They do not fret over setbacks or delays. They are not overwhelmed by trouble or difficulties. By faith they know that they can overcome any and every obstacle.

### **Mental Coercion**

Your spirit does not respond to coercion, it responds to your faith. Coercion usually carries with it a dependency on willpower and a mind trying to figure it out. I used to say that if I said to the mountain in my life, “move”, and it doesn't, then I will get a pick and shovel and make it move. That error cost me dearly in life, causing me to make foolish decisions. You cannot force the answer to your prayer. No amount of ingenuity, or aggressive behaviour will do. Remember that faith only operates in an environment of peace – a sense of “it is done” even

before there is any outward appearance of anything changing. You must still your natural mind, breathe deeply, let go of the worry and fear and simply accept the answer you are seeking without the need to figure it out.

When you are using coercion or trying to make it happen, you will find yourself often going through mental anguish. At one moment you are sure of the outcome but when your efforts fail you doubt or give up. You change your mind. James in the Bible says, *"A double minded man will receive nothing"*. James 1:8.

### **Easy Does It**

Relaxation is the key. "Easy does it." Do not be concerned with details and means but know the result. As one man once told me, "when you know in your knower you will get the result desired". Get the feel of the happy solution to your problem whether it is health, finances, or employment. Bear in mind that your deep-seated feeling is the reality of your spirit. Your new idea must be felt subjectively in a finished state, not the future, but as coming about now. You need to feel the reality now through imagination and give thanks as if it were already done.

### **Not Willpower but Focus**

In using your spirit, you use no will power. You imagine the desired result. Your only fight is against any thought that goes against what you are believing for. But at times you will find your intellect trying to get in the way. *"Trust in the Lord with all your heart and lean not on your own understanding"* Prov. 3:5; Persist in maintaining a simple, childlike, miracle making faith. Picture yourself without the ailment or problem. Imagine yourself debt free and with money in the bank. See yourself shopping without a list. Imagine the emotional accompaniment of the freedom that brings and the joy of accomplishment. Cut out all red tape from the process. The simple way is the best.

Again, remember that to get rid of the darkness you do not need to fight it, trap it or wrestle with it. All you must do is turn on the light. The only fight is to resist all thoughts that are contrary to what you have chosen to believe by deliberately replacing them with positive thoughts. It is all about staying focused on your desired outcome or goal. *"Fight the good fight of faith"*. 1 Timothy 6:12. You do not need to fight people or the Devil. Did you notice how Jesus handled Satan's temptations? He simply said, "it is written". No argument, no debate no fight. Jesus simply stood His ground on what God said and that was that. In like manner, to overcome evil we need only restate the truth, the positive and the good we desire as a reality here and now. To that end I highly recommend printing out the many Bible promises and statements about faith in God as referred to in this book. Then anytime you are plagued with doubt, take them out and read them over slowly and thoughtfully until a deep peace settles in your mind and heart again.

## **How Disciplined Imagination Works Wonders**

A wonderful way to get faith into your spirit is through disciplined purposeful imagination. The Bible says, *whatever you ask in prayer, believing, you will receive. Matthew 21:22* To believe is to accept something as true, or to live in the state of being it. As you sustain this mood, you will experience the joy of the answered prayer. For some people imagination comes more easily than others but it is the most powerful tool to answered prayer. You must see the result before you start and fully expect it will be so without doubt.

## **The Four Steps to Success in Prayer**

The procedure is as follows:

1. Take a quick look at the problem but Don't dwell on it.
2. Focus on the result desired and make it clear through visualizing it and by making declarations about it. Don't try to figure out a solution. Through your spirit, you will find the right solution in due course.
3. Rest in a sense of deep conviction that it is done. Keep declaring until you feel peaceful about it.
4. Give thanks to God for your answered prayer - see Him loving you and giving you what you desired of Him.

Do not weaken your prayer by saying, "I hope I will get healed." "I hope so." Your feeling about the work to be done is "the boss." Know that health or prosperity is yours NOW. Become intelligent by becoming a vehicle for the infinite healing power of the spirit. Pass on the idea of health to your spirit to the point of conviction; then relax. Get yourself off your hands. Say to the condition and circumstance, "You, too, will pass." Through relaxation and confidence, you impress your spirit enabling the energy behind the idea to take over and bring it into concrete realization.

## **Why You Sometimes Get the Opposite of What You Pray For**

Coué, the famous psychologist from France, defined the law of reversed effort as follows: "When your desires and imagination are in conflict, your imagination invariably gains the day."

If, for example, you were asked to walk across a 6-inch beam on the floor, you would do so without question. Now suppose the same beam were placed five hundred feet up in the air between two buildings without a safety net or harness, would you walk it? What if I offered you a million dollars to do it? Your desire to walk it would be counteracted by your imagination or fear of falling even though you had no trouble walking across it when it was on the ground. Your dominant idea, which would be the picture of falling, would conquer your desire. Your desire, will, or effort to walk on the board would be reversed, and the dominant idea of failure would be reinforced.

Mental effort is invariably self defeating, resulting always in the opposite of what is desired. The dominant thought becomes “what if I fall?” There is no “what if” when you have faith. Your spirit is always controlled by the dominant idea. Your spirit will accept the stronger of two contradictory propositions. The effortless way is the better way because it is peace and peace cannot exist without absolute confidence and assurance. Where these exist, faith grows and where faith grows miracles happen.

If you say, “I want to be healed and have been prayed for many times before, but I can’t get it;” “I try so hard;” “I try to believe;” “I use all the will power I have,” you must realize that your error lies in your effort. Never try to compel the spirit to accept your idea by exercising will power. Such attempts are doomed to failure, and you get the opposite of what you prayed for. Faith is after all peaceful acceptance of the outcome hoped for, as already done before you even ask.

The following is a rather common experience which I myself experienced at many exams. Students, when taking exams and reading through their exam questions, find that all their knowledge has suddenly deserted them. Their minds become blank, and they are unable to recall one relevant thought. The more they grit their teeth and summon the powers of the will, the further the answers seem to flee. Have you experienced that too? But, when they have left the exam room and the mental pressure relaxes, the answers they were trying to remember flow back effortlessly into their minds. Trying to force themselves to remember was the cause of their failure. This is an example of the law of reversed effort whereby you get the opposite of what you asked or prayed for.

## CHAPTER 10

### Wealth Begins with How You Think

If you are having financial difficulties, if you are trying to make ends meet, it means you have not convinced your spirit that you will always have plenty and some to spare. You probably know men and women who work a few hours a week and make fabulous sums of money. They do not strive or slave hard. We often just think it is because they are lucky, or they must be doing something illegal - maybe dealing drugs on the side? Do not believe the story that the only way you can become wealthy is by the sweat of your brow and hard labour. Such things originated with the fall of man in the Garden of Eden. Hard labour came with the curse which Jesus died to redeem us from.

The effortless way of life is not only the best way but also the right way if we truly believe Jesus came to deliver us from the curse. Do the thing you love to do and do it for the joy and thrill of it, believing it will prosper. Steve Jobs the founder of Apple said that he never worked a day in his life. Yet he “worked” more than many. The secret is that he enjoyed what he was doing so no effort was a chore. We are created to work make no mistake, but it’s the way we look at and do what we do – either for a sense of accomplishment and the pleasure associated with that or by the sweat of our brow because we must.

Most people have heard of Sir Richard Branson. A man whose empire spans 400 companies, 10 of which are billion-dollar companies. Richard has always pursued what he was passionate about. His advice is to do what you love with all the passion you can muster, and it will succeed. He has never started a business for the sole purpose of getting rich. Getting rich was the outcome of him fulfilling his passion to do something of value for others and to do it better than anyone else in the industry.

Although it is possible to gain wealth without contributing much benefit to others or by taking advantage of the poor, the Bible indicates that those who gain wealth that way will end up leaving it all to the poor anyway. It will vanish because God will see to it that it does.

### **You Already Have Everything You Need**

*God has given to us EVERYTHING we need according to His riches in glory. 2 Peter 1:3*

How rich is He anyway? Notice the tense of this verse – “has”. It is not future, because it resides in your spirit right now waiting to be released. A man with a poverty type mind finds himself in poverty-stricken conditions. Another man with a mind filled with ideas of wealth is surrounded with everything he needs. It was never intended that man should lead a life of poverty. You can have wealth, everything you need, and plenty to spare. In the *23rd Psalm* King David

said, *"The Lord is my shepherd - therefore I shall not be in want"*. We would do well to say the same. Your words have power to cleanse your mind of wrong ideas and to instill right ideas in their place.

### **The Ideal Method for Building a Wealth Consciousness**

Perhaps you are saying as you read this chapter, "I need wealth and success." Most folks do, but as with healing we need to recondition our thinking and we do so by new deliberate declarations of what we desire. This is what you do: Repeat for about five minutes to yourself three or four times a day, "I do what I love to do, and I prosper in all I do". These words have tremendous power because they become the focus of your spirit and in time the dominant thought. They represent the inner power of the spirit.

Anchor your mind on this substantial power within you; then conditions and circumstances corresponding to their nature and quality will be manifested in your life. I highly recommend you write these statements on a card or piece of paper and carry it with you daily and refer to it daily. Having a list of life changing statements with you always enables you to stay focused and to overcome all doubts and fears as they arise. Don't leave it up to your memory alone. If you are one of those people who live on their smart phones then write them on a notepad on your phone and instead of wasting time playing stupid games or browsing Facebook, take some time to slowly read the prescriptions you wrote and visualize them. This practice will radically change your life for the better and takes little effort.

The reality is many people are not doing what they love to do. They hate their job but do it because they need the money. This results in them remaining on the treadmill of poverty because their spirit is programmed with the dominant thought of "I have to work because I need the money." This is a poverty mentality and focused totally on the wrong thing. *"Be transformed by the renewing of your mind .. that you may prove the good and acceptable and perfect will of God."* Romans 12:2. And what is that will? To deliver you from the curse and bless you with every good thing.

By saying, "I am always successful in all I do," you are directing your thoughts to success and soon the expectation of success develops within your spirit. When it does, success in all you do will be your experience. Your mind might argue by saying "Well look at all your failures - that statement is not true". Its thoughts like this that you need to overcome through reprogramming - again by simple affirmation and in peace. You must reject those thoughts and keep saying "I am always successful in all I do".



It is said that Thomas Edison was once asked about how he handled failing a thousand times as he tried to invent the incandescent light bulb. His answer was clearly what you would expect from a successful man as he was. He simply said, "I have NEVER failed once. I did however successfully determine which methods would not work. It's all how you look at it. Remember you do not drive darkness out of a room, you simply turn on the light and darkness disappears. Ignore all the negative past or thoughts that would conflict with the notion of success. Your past "failures" are nothing more than learning what doesn't work and that is a positive step forward. Few successful people start out that way. In fact, they usually fail more often than they win. The famous baseball player "Babe Ruth" not only held the world record for the most home runs, he also had the record for the most strike outs. He just played more games and tried more often than others. See in your imagination your success and relish in all that means to you - financial prosperity, recognition and the ability to enjoy your life with those you love.

Your spirit is like a bank, a sort of universal financial institution. It magnifies whatever you deposit or impress upon it whether it is the idea of success or failure. The Bible warns against pursuing wealth and we are told not to pursue wealth itself. Such desires cause people to open themselves up to a myriad of more harmful things driven by greed and that often leads us to take advantage of others to gain our own personal wealth. Some have resorted to all kinds of criminal activities to get wealth, even as far as murder. Do not pursue wealth but expect it as you focus on serving others in ways that will reward you and be a benefit to others. The late Zig Ziglar always said, "If you help enough other people get what they want, they will give you what you want", and he was right.

Most people are familiar with the story of King Solomon. The Lord appeared to him in a dream and asked him a very telling question. What is it that you really want Solomon? What would you have chosen? If you are like most people you would have asked for wealth, so you could live a wonderful life. But not Solomon. He was focused instead on being the best leader of Israel. So, he asked for wisdom instead that he might rule the people well. His focus was to be the best leader and it was for their benefit not his own. If you are seeking success or wealth for your own need or greed you may for a time succeed but it will be empty, and you will never be satisfied. As stated previously you need to focus on something you can be passionate about and will benefit others. Wealth thus gained will be healthy and lasting. *"The blessing of the Lord makes one rich and adds no sorrow to it."* Proverbs 10:22. You can get wealthy by being greedy and pursuing wealth, but in the end, it will bite like a snake and ultimately destroy you. When Solomon chose a more noble goal, God blessed him with everything else and he became the most wealthy and prosperous man of his time. He also experienced peace for himself and the nation of Israel - no wars or battles during his reign.

In my own experience when I began to write this book, I had for nearly eight years suffered want. I barely survived from month to month despite working on great business ideas and working hard. But my ability to create ideas was exceptional because I truly believed I was an idea person - an innovator and so I am. But what I failed to impress my spirit with was prosperity. I was more excited and focused on developing the ideas - until I hit the inevitable roadblock of not having the money, I needed to bring my ideas to life. Somehow, I always feared that eventually because deep inside I never believed I would have the money I would need to succeed.

So, I decided that I would start to impregnate my spirit with "I do what I love to do and am successful in all I do" This became my prescription which I took faithfully at least 3 times a day. I slowly, with my eyes closed and thoughtfully did this. Within a week massive changes started to happen and suddenly everything I needed started to come my way. Start-up money, a perfect office space, great response from potential customers and it seems almost everyone around me were enthusiastic for me and willing to help me realize my goals. That had never happened before.

But later things started to go wrong, and I found myself worrying and struggling to survive. Forgetting what I am teaching in this book I quickly lost everything I had previously gained. It is so critical to stay focused and have the right attitude no matter what challenges come along. I am as human as anyone which is why even I must keep reminding myself of these principles and work at them faithfully in all areas of my life. When I do, success is mine but when I stop failure.

### **Why Your Affirmations for Wealth May Fail**

I have talked to many people whose usual complaint is, "I have said for weeks and months, 'I am wealthy, I am prosperous,' and nothing has happened." I discovered that when they said, "I am prosperous, I am wealthy," they felt within that they were lying to themselves. They also lacked perseverance.

One man said, "I have affirmed that I am prosperous until I am blue in the face. Things are now worse than ever. I knew when I made the statement that it was obviously not true." His statements were rejected by his conscious mind, and the very opposite of what he outwardly affirmed and claimed was made manifest.

Your affirmation succeeds best when it is specific and when it does not produce a mental conflict or argument; hence the statements made by this man, made matters worse because they suggested his lack. Your spirit accepts what you really feel to be true, not just idle words or statements. The dominant idea or belief is always accepted by the spirit. Just repeating the statement without feeling and visualizing the result desired will produce nothing but frustration and failure.

The following is one way to overcome this conflict for those who have this difficulty. Make this practical statement frequently, particularly prior to sleep: “From this day forward I am being prospered in all I do.” This affirmation will not arouse any argument because it does not contradict your spirit’s impression of financial lack or past failures.

### **Your Spirit Gives You Compound Interest**

To him that has the feeling of wealth, more wealth shall be added; to him that has the feeling of lack, more lack shall be added. Your spirit multiplies and magnifies whatever you deposit in it. Just as a single seed planted produces fruit containing many seeds so it is with your thoughts. Every morning as you awaken deposit thoughts of prosperity, success, wealth, and peace. Dwell upon these concepts. Busy your mind with them as often as possible. These constructive thoughts will find their way as deposits in your spirit and bring forth abundance and prosperity.

### **The True Source of Wealth**

Your spirit is never short of ideas. There are within it an infinite number of ideas ready to flow into your conscious mind and appear as cash in your bank account in countless ways. This process will continue to go on in your mind regardless of whether the stock market goes up or down, or whether your currency drops in value.

Your wealth is never truly dependent on bonds, stocks, or money in the bank; these are only symbols necessary and useful, of course, but only symbols. The point I wish to emphasize is that if you convince your spirit that wealth is yours, and that it is always circulating in your life, you will always and inevitably have it, regardless of the form it takes. Through faith you have the goose that lays the golden eggs and that can never be taken away from you. Financial losses are only a temporary set back to the man of faith because he knows how to get more.

### **Sleep and Grow Rich**

As you go to sleep at night, pray that God shows you ideas and ways to do something that will benefit others and at the same time prosper you. Go to sleep expecting to receive those ideas and they will come. I have had many such nights and have awoken often in the middle of the night with amazing ideas. I always keep a notepad and pen at my beside so I can write the ideas down before going back to sleep. If you pray with expectation you will receive those ideas.

Wealth will flow to you in avalanches of abundance. But it will come through ideas that will benefit others and you. *“Give and it shall be given unto you”*. *Luke 6:38*. By giving your talents, abilities and ideas to benefit others, they give

you of their wealth in exchange. When you truly believe, there is no need to hoard or be selfish. There is no need to rip people off or take advantage of them. The truly prosperous person is generous with all things and by sowing generosity they reap an abundance of generosity from others. It is the law of sowing and reaping. In like manner if you take advantage of others or are selfish it will be multiplied back to you again because others will take advantage of you and not support you either. At first it may seem like you are getting away with it, but you are only fooling yourself because it will come back on your own head sooner or later.

## CHAPTER 11

### Your Ought to Be Wealthy

*“And my God shall supply all your needs according to His riches in glory”. Philippians. 4:19* So what do you need? You are here to lead the abundant life and be happy, radiant, and free. *“I have come that they may have life and have it more abundantly”.* John 10:10. That is part of what Jesus died for – to restore what man had lost to Satan. You should, therefore, have all the money you need to lead a full, happy, and prosperous life. You are here to grow, expand, and unfold spiritually, mentally, and materially. God wants to meet all your needs and He is abundantly able to do so no matter what that need may be.

He created beauty for you to behold and find pleasure in. Why be satisfied with just enough to go around when you can enjoy the riches already available to you through faith? Poverty does not glorify God. No, I am not saying that if you are poor that God can't be glorified in your life. Your attitude through poverty and suffering can in fact bring glory to God too and it should. God is more concerned with our character – our love for Him and others and our faith. That form of wealth we all ought to pursue. That is where we ought to start in our journey to prosperity because then it will last and not hurt us. *“The blessing of the Lord makes on rich and adds no sorrow with it”.* Proverbs 10:22.

When you have more than you need you are enabled to then also help those who have little and there are many such unfortunate people. Remember however that greed is sin and God will not cater to your greed. So, what is greed? Greed is an inordinate or insatiable longing for unneeded excess whether its possessions, money, or food. A greedy person is easy to identify because they also possess its ugly twin – selfishness. A selfish person is not necessarily greedy, but you cannot be greedy and not selfish, because the nature of greed is self focused – I want, I want, I want. There is nothing wrong with wanting a nice home or nice things or wealth but beware when your desire for these things becomes the centre of your focus.

If you have faith you can receive anything you need when you need it. So, there is no need to be selfish, hoard or be greedy. Love is the greatest character trait of all and is of far more value than possessions or even faith to receive what you need when you need it. Do you care about others? I want more than I need so that I am enabled to give to others who are in need. We are to be God's hand, to be a blessing to others. Therefore, you ought to be wealthy. How else will you be able to feed the hungry or clothe the naked? It's God's will that we help others this way but that means we need wealth and have more than we need so that we can do this. We MUST become wealthy so that we have an ever-expanding ability to bless others.

Through Christ we have been given all the riches found in Him. Riches of character, pleasure in relationships and wealth in terms of possessions and money. God is not by any means the cheapskate many portray Him to be. Nor is He only concerned with meeting our basic needs. We really need to rid ourselves of that wrong perception otherwise we will continue to suffer want unnecessarily.

In this chapter, you will learn to make friends with money, and you should always have a surplus. Your desire to be rich should be a desire for a fuller, happier, more wonderful life. It is a natural desire as is health and joy in relationships filled with Love. It is not only good, but also very good, when sought after in the right manner. Riches will either bless you or curse you and it is up to you to decide which it will be. If you love money you will stop at nothing to get it leading to all kinds of evil. The drug dealer for example sells drugs because he can make a lot of money, yet he is destroying the lives of many who purchase his goods. And sooner or later he destroys his own life.

Money is the reward of contributing something beneficial to others. In some cases, it may be something not good, like drugs, but in general, a wealthy nation is one wherein its citizens are encouraged to create something for others. Desiring wealth without contribution is greed which itself is a negative emotion leading to other negative behaviour. Your spirit is filled with great ideas to create something new or improve on something that will help others. Solving problems is something your spirit can and should do and in doing so, you are able to solve problems for others who will gladly pay you for solving their problem. We were created to contribute something for the benefit of others. The lazy man however seeks to gain wealth through theft or defrauding others. Such methods of attaining wealth will ultimately destroy you.

### **Money is a Symbol**

Money is a symbol of exchange. It means to you not only freedom from want, but beauty, luxury, abundance, and fulfillment. It is merely a symbol of the economic health of the nation. When your blood is circulating freely in your body, you are healthy. When money is circulating freely in your life, you are economically healthy. When people begin to hoard money, to put it away in boxes, and become fearful of losing it, there is economic illness. Money has taken many forms as a medium of exchange down through the centuries, such as, salt, beads, and trinkets of various kinds. In early times, a man's wealth was determined by the number of sheep and oxen he had. Now we use paper or electronic money, and other negotiable instruments, as it is much more convenient to write a cheque than carry some sheep around with you to pay bills or purchase goods.

### **How To Walk The Royal Road To Riches**

Knowledge of the riches already deposited in your spirit is the means to the royal road to riches of all kinds; spiritual, mental, or financial. Once you understand and take hold of the fact that “*ALL THINGS are possible to those who believe*” *Mark 9:23*, you will understand that regardless of economic situations, stock market fluctuations, depression, strikes, war, natural disasters or other conditions or circumstances, you will always be amply supplied, regardless of what form money takes.

The reason for this is that you have conveyed the idea of wealth and success to your spirit, and it will keep you supplied wherever you may be. You would have convinced yourself in your mind that money is forever flowing freely in your life and that there is always a wonderful surplus. Should there be a financial collapse tomorrow and all your present holdings become valueless, as the German Marks did after the First World War, you would still attract wealth and be cared for; regardless of the form, the new currency took.

Another interesting perspective is a story I read years ago about a man who ran a very successful plumbing business. He decided to live recklessly because money was pouring in and soon found himself addicted to alcohol after many binge parties. His addiction resulted in his wife divorcing him, losing access to his children and not long after the collapse of his business. He lost it all. After feeling sorry for himself for a while he decided to take inventory of his life – not just what he had lost, but what he still had. On the positive side he had only 2 things he could think of that he still had. His health, and the knowledge of how to build a multi-million-dollar business.

Pulling himself together he forsook alcohol altogether, started a new business and within only 2 years he was once again a millionaire. Failure is only temporary to those who have faith to start again despite failure.

### **Why You Do Not Have More Money**

One reason you do not prosper is that you have a sneaky spirit feeling there is some virtue in poverty. This spirit pattern may be due to early childhood training, superstition, or it could be based on a false understanding of what the Bible teaches about money. You look perhaps at the opulence of the wealthy and some of the disgusting things they do with their money and so you “throw out the baby with the bathwater”. Instead of realizing that it is not wealth that precipitates uncontrolled, riotous living, but bad choices and the foolishness of those who possess such wealth – usually inherited or given to them.

Abraham the father of faith was extremely wealthy, as were Job, King David, Solomon and others. Wealth is not a deterrent to faith or righteous living. Yes, money can be abused and used for evil but in the same way it can be used for good. The trouble is too often it is not used in good ways because too many

thoughtful and generous people feel its wrong to be super wealthy and hence never have the means to effect massive good on the earth.

The story of the rich young ruler who came to Jesus and asked what he needed to do in order to gain eternal life has I believe been totally misunderstood. *Matthew 19:16-23, Mark 10:17-22, and Luke 18:18-23* Jesus told him to sell everything he had, give it to the poor and then come and follow him. We see the rich young man turning away in disappointment because he could not let go of his riches. Many assume that Jesus was against being rich but that is not at all the case. This story is to underline the fact that this young man trusted in his riches instead of God who could amply supply him with whatever he needed anytime. His security was not in God but in his wealth. It is interesting to note that the tomb Jesus was buried in was supplied by a rich man who followed Jesus and donated it.

### **Money and a Balanced Life**

Over the years I have often heard people say that, "money is the root of all evil." People who say that are almost always broke and have no money. This statement is a misquote from the Bible that says, *"The love of money... is the root of evil". 1 Timothy 6:10*. If you look at so many crimes today you will see that some people will stop at nothing for money. Some will sell their bodies in the sex trade, some will rob others, some will kill and so on for money. I once heard it said that "every man has a price at which he can be bought". Money however is merely a medium of exchange and is neither good nor evil. Money that is honestly gained and wisely used is of great value however and therefore we ought to engage in such worthy goals.

Love of money to the exclusion of everything else will however, cause you to become lopsided and unbalanced. You are here to use your talents or authority wisely. Some men crave power others crave money, and some crave both. If you set your heart on money exclusively and say, "Money is all I want; I am going to give all my attention to amassing money; nothing else matters," you can get money and attain a fortune, but your life will be empty and devoid of meaning. To enjoy life to the fullest, you must learn to live a balanced life and understand that imbalance will ultimately destroy your life in other ways.

You must also satisfy the hunger for peace of mind, harmony, love, joy, and perfect health. ITS NOT ONE OR THE OTHER as some allege. To be balanced we need all these things in our lives. By making money your sole aim, you simply are making a wrong choice. Ask many of those who have gone down that path and they will tell you. They thought that was all they wanted but found after all their efforts that it was not only the money they needed. They also desired true expression of their talents, to love and be loved, true peace, beauty, and the joy of contributing to the welfare and success of others. By learning the laws of faith operating through your spirit, you could have a million dollars or



many millions, if you wanted them, and still have peace of mind, harmony, perfect health, and perfect expression.

Pursue wealth but be careful that you don't make it a god in your life to the exclusion of everything and everyone else. Always give more than you get, and you will always have plenty.

### **Poverty is a Mental Problem**

There is no virtue in poverty; it is a disease like any other mental disease. If you were physically ill, you would recognize that there was something wrong with you. You would make a doctor's appointment and do something about the condition. Likewise, if you do not have money constantly circulating in your life, something is amiss, and you need to fix it.

Usually it is because of wrong attitudes and feelings about money. If you live in a poor country it is very difficult to think prosperity when so many are so poor. But I have observed even in poor countries in Africa that there are a few very wealthy people. How did they get so wealthy when everyone else it seems is so poor? Its all a matter of mental conditioning really. Today anyone has access to the world through the internet to learn, make connections and market products.

While visiting Zambia a number of years ago I observed a number of multi-million dollar opportunities for someone in Zambia to take advantage of. Wealth is possible in many ways but because they have not been helped to see the bigger picture, few recognize these opportunities. Some of the opportunities also exist in Zimbabwe who as of 2018 has an unemployment rate of 90%. Even there, there is no need to stay impoverished, because opportunities abound to create wealth.

### **Getting the Right Attitude Toward Money**

The Bible speaks much about attitudes to money but never condemns it. Money is neither evil nor good. It is merely a medium of exchange of assets and labour. Having an abundance of money allows you many options as to what you can do therefore it is desirable.

As previously stated, the accumulation of money was never intended for the lazy or greedy, but to those who contribute something for the benefit of others. The retail store owner for example, makes products easily available to people who want and need those products. Manufacturers create new and useful products that help people enjoy life more or make work easier. Farmers grow food to feed others. Whatever your passion is, do it with everything in you, and do it to benefit others. In doing so you will reap rich rewards and wealth will flow to you in abundance.

Wisdom is recognizing what resources you have at your disposal and then using those resources to benefit others who do not have them. For example, on Vancouver Island where I live, we have a weed with nasty thorns called blackberries. They can be a real nuisance, but the fruit is delicious and abundant. Some have recognized the potential of this fruit and have not only packaged them for sale in grocery stores, but also made juice with them and sell it to wineries and manufacturers of flavour additives for use in yogurts, ice cream and other food products.

There is an island in the south Pacific called Nauru. This country island is a stopping place for migrating birds and what they left behind was an abundance of poo. But enterprising individuals recognized that the poo was rich in phosphates which are needed for fertilizing plants. So, they began harvesting it and packaging it as fertilizer. It resulted in millions of dollars in income. The government declared it a national resource for the benefit of all its citizens. In fact, at one point they were distributing profits to every citizen in the sum of \$30,000 US dollars per year.

There was plenty to pay for government expenses so no need for taxation. I guarantee that no matter where you live, something where you live could be turned into an asset to make money. The secret is to learn what people need locally and elsewhere in the world. For example, in many countries in Africa they struggle with malaria due to the mosquitoes there. Yet almost nobody has screens on their windows or doors. Instead some use mosquito nets over their beds but unless you stay under the net all night you still stand a chance of getting bitten by a mosquito with malaria.

Zambia has a massive problem with ant hills. They wreak havoc with farmlands and can be large enough to hollow out for a garage. Yet over 17 years ago now the university of Zambia discovered that the ants secrete some sort of saliva when making these hills and the soil is comprised of perfect small grains. When harvested and used to make bricks, they discovered that the bricks are ten times stronger than most other bricks currently manufactured. In some outlying farms, you will see small brick works where they make bricks to build their own buildings. This is a massive opportunity for someone to exploit and market to other countries who build with bricks. One would not even need to start their own brick works but rather encourage farmers who already have one to expand their production and buy their bricks benefiting the farmers as well as themselves. I could go on because there were numerous other opportunities I observed in Zambia just waiting for someone to utilize.

While teaching on business in Zambia I learned some interesting things. These people have as many great ideas as any I have met around the world. They have the potential to be very wealthy. Yet many have not learned how to harness it.

They have become mentally trapped by poverty all around them and thus find it very difficult to imagine being wealthy.

I like a term the late Dr. Robert Schuller used – “possibility thinking”. It is that kind of thinking that causes change. Instead of feeling sorry for oneself or being envious of others who were born into more affluent societies, anyone anywhere can create wealth by focusing on what opportunities are right in front of them. One of the lectures that changed my attitude and thinking is “Acres of Diamonds”. It is such an inspiring lecture that I have decided to add it here.

## **Acres of Diamonds**

**Russell Conwell**

Delivered over 5,000 times at various times and places from 1900-1925  
Edited by Ken Crause

When going down the Tigris and Euphrates rivers many years ago with a party of English travellers I found myself under the direction of an old Arab guide whom we hired up at Baghdad, and I have often thought how that guide resembled our barbers in certain mental characteristics. He thought that it was not only his duty to guide us down those rivers, and do what he was paid for doing, but to entertain us with stories curious and weird, ancient and modern strange, and familiar. Many of them I have forgotten, and I am glad I have, but there is one I shall never forget.

The old guide was leading my camel by its halter along the banks of those ancient rivers, and he told me story after story until I grew weary of his storytelling and ceased to listen. I have never been irritated with that guide when he lost his temper as I ceased listening. But I remember that he took off his Turkish cap and swung it in a circle to get my attention. I could see it through the corner of my eye, but I determined not to look straight at him for fear he would tell another story. But I did finally look, and as soon as I did, he went right into another story. Said he, “I will tell you a story now which I reserve for my particular friends.” When he emphasized the words “particular friends,” I listened and I have ever been glad I did. I really feel devoutly thankful, that there are 1,674 young men who have been carried through college by this lecture who are also glad that I did listen.

The old guide told me that there once lived not far from the River Indus an ancient Persian by the name of Ali Hafed. He said that Ali Hafed owned a very large farm; that he had orchards, grain-fields, and gardens; that he had money at interest and was a wealthy and contented man. One day there visited that old Persian farmer one of those ancient Buddhist priests, one of the wise men of the

East. He sat down by the fire and told the old farmer how this old world of ours was made.

He said that this world was once a mere bank of fog, and that the Almighty thrust His finger into this bank of fog, and began slowly to move His finger around, increasing the speed until at last He whirled this bank of fog into a solid ball of fire. Then it went rolling through the universe, burning its way through other banks of fog, and condensed the moisture without, until it fell in floods of rain upon its hot surface, and cooled the outward crust. Then the internal fires bursting outward through the crust threw up the mountains and hills, the valleys, the plains and prairies of this wonderful world of ours. If this internal molten mass came bursting out and cooled very quickly, it became granite; less quickly copper, less quickly silver, less quickly gold, and, after gold, diamonds were made. Said the old priest, "A diamond is a congealed drop of sunlight."

The old priest told Ali Hafed that if he had one diamond the size of his thumb, he could purchase the county, and if he had a mine of diamonds he could place his children upon thrones through the influence of their great wealth. Ali Hafed heard all about diamonds, how much they were worth, and went to his bed that night a poor man. He had not lost anything, but he was poor because he was discontented, and discontented because he feared he was poor. He said, "I want a mine of diamonds," and he lay awake all night. Early in the morning he sought out the priest. I know by experience that a priest is very angry when awakened early in the morning, and when he shook that old priest out of his dreams, Ali Hafed said to him:

"Will you tell me where I find diamonds?"

"Diamonds! What do you want with diamonds?"

"Why, I wish to be immensely rich."

"Well, then, go along and find them. That is all you must do; go and find them, and then you have them."

"But I don't know where to go."

"Well, if you will find a river that runs through white sands, between high mountains, in those white sands you will always find diamonds."

"I don't believe there is any such river."

"Oh yes, there are plenty of them. All you have to do is to go and find them, and then you will have them."

Said Ali Hafed, "I will go."

So he sold his farm, collected his money, left his family in charge of a neighbour, and away he went in search of diamonds. He began his search, very properly to my mind, at the Mountains of the Moon. Afterward he came around into Palestine, then wandered on into Europe, and at last when his money was all spent and he was in rags, wretchedness, and poverty, he stood on the shore of that bay at Barcelona, in Spain, when a great tidal wave came rolling in between

the pillars of Hercules, and the poor, afflicted, suffering, dying man could not resist the awful temptation to cast himself into that incoming tide, and he sank beneath its foaming crest, never to rise in this life again.

Then after that old guide had told me that awfully sad story, he stopped the camel I was riding on and went back to fix the baggage that was coming off another camel, and I had an opportunity to muse over his story while he was gone. I remember saying to myself, "Why did he reserve that story for his 'particular friends'?" There seemed to be no beginning, no middle, no end, nothing to it.

That was the first story I had ever heard told in my life, and would be the first one I ever read, in which the hero was killed in the first chapter. I had but one chapter of that story, and the hero was dead. When the guide came back and took up the halter of my camel, he went right ahead with the story, into the second chapter, just as though there had been no break.

The man who purchased Ali Hafed's farm one day led his camel into the garden to drink, and as that camel put its nose into the shallow water of that garden brook, Ali Hafed's successor noticed a curious flash of light from the white sands of the stream. He pulled out a black stone having an eye of light reflecting all the hues of the rainbow. He took the pebble into the house and put it on the mantel which covers the central fires, and forgot all about it.

A few days later this same old priest came in to visit Ali Hafed's successor, and the moment he opened that drawing-room door he saw that flash of light on the mantel, and he rushed up to it, and shouted:

"Here is a diamond! Has Ali Hafed returned?"

"Oh no, Ali Hafed has not returned, and that is not a diamond. That is nothing but a stone we found right out here in our own garden."

"But," said the priest, "I tell you I know a diamond when I see it. I know positively that is a diamond."

Then together they rushed out into that old garden and stirred up the white sands with their fingers, and lo! There came up other more beautiful and valuable gems than the first. "Thus," said the guide to me, "was discovered the diamond-mine of Golconda, the most magnificent diamond-mine in all the history of mankind, excelling the Kimberly itself. The Kohinoor, and the Orloff of the crown jewels of England and Russia, the largest on earth, came from that mine."

When that old Arab guide told me the second chapter of his story, he then took off his Turkish cap and swung it around in the air again to get my attention to the moral. Those Arab guides have morals to their stories, although they are not always moral. As he swung his hat, he said to me, "Had Ali Hafed remained at

home and dug in his own cellar, or underneath his own wheat fields or in his own garden, instead of wretchedness, starvation, and death by suicide in a strange land, he would have had 'acres of diamonds.' For every acre of that old farm, yes, every shovelful, afterward revealed gems which since have decorated the crowns of monarchs."

When he had added the moral of his story, I saw why he reserved it for "his particular friends." But I did not tell him that I could see it. It was that mean old Arab's way of going around a thing like a lawyer, to say indirectly what he did not dare say directly, that "in his private opinion there was a certain young man then travelling down the Tigris River that might better be at home in America." I did not tell him I could see that, but I told it to him quick, and I think I will tell it to you.

I told him of a man out in California in 1847, who owned a ranch. He heard they had discovered gold in southern California, and so with a passion for gold he sold his ranch to Colonel Sutter, and away he went, never to come back. Colonel Sutter put a mill upon a stream that ran through that ranch, and one day his little girl brought some wet sand from the raceway into their home and sifted it through her fingers before the fire, and in that falling sand a visitor saw the first shining scales of real gold that were ever discovered in California. The man who had owned that ranch wanted gold, and he could have secured it for the mere taking. Indeed, thirty-eight million dollars has been taken out of a very few acres since then.

About eight years ago, I delivered this lecture in a city that stands on that farm, and they told me that a one-third owner for years and years had been getting one hundred and twenty dollars in gold every fifteen minutes, sleeping or waking, without taxation. You and I would enjoy an income like that -- if we didn't have to pay an income tax.

But a better illustration occurred here in our town of Pennsylvania. If there is anything I enjoy above another on the platform, it is to get one of these German audiences in Pennsylvania, and fire that story at them, and I enjoy it tonight.

There was a man living in Pennsylvania, not unlike some Pennsylvanians you have seen, who owned a farm, and he did with that farm just what I should do with a farm if I owned one in Pennsylvania- he sold it. But before he sold it, he decided to secure employment collecting coal-oil for his cousin, who was in the business in Canada, where they first discovered oil on this continent.

They dipped it from the running streams at that early time. So this Pennsylvania farmer wrote to his cousin asking for employment. You see, friends, this farmer was not altogether a foolish man. No, he was not. He did not leave his farm until he had something else to do. Of all the simpletons, the stars shine on, I don't

know of a worse one than the man who leaves one job before he has gotten another.

When he wrote to his cousin for employment, his cousin replied, "I cannot engage you because you know nothing about the oil business." Well, then the old farmer said, "I will know," and with most commendable zeal (characteristic of the students of Temple University) he set himself to study the whole subject. He began away back at the second day of God's creation when this world was covered thick and deep with that rich vegetation which since has turned to the primitive beds of coal. He studied the subject until he found that the draining of those rich beds of coal furnished the coal-oil that was worth pumping, and then he found out how it came up with the living springs. He studied until he knew what it looked like, smelled like, tasted like, and how to refine it. Now he said in his letter to his cousin, "I understand the oil business." His cousin answered, "All right, come on."

So he sold his farm, according to the county record, for \$833 (even money, "no cents"). He had scarcely gone from that place before the man who purchased the spot went out to arrange for the watering of his cattle. He found the previous owner had gone out years before and put a plank across the brook at the back of the barn, edgewise into the surface of the water just a few inches. The purpose of that plank at that sharp angle across the brook was to throw over to the other bank a dreadful-looking scum through which the cattle would not put their noses.

With that plank there to throw it all over to one side, the cattle would drink below. That man who had gone to Canada had been himself damming back for twenty-three years a flood of coal-oil which the state geologists of Pennsylvania declared to us ten years later was even then worth a hundred million dollars to our state, a billion dollars. The man who owned that territory on which the city of Titusville now stands, and those Pleasantville valleys, had studied the subject from the second day of God's creation clear down to the present time. He studied it until he knew all about it, and yet he is said to have sold the whole of it for \$833, and again I say, "It makes no sense."

But I need another illustration. I found it in Massachusetts, and I am sorry I did because that is the state I came from. This young man in Massachusetts furnishes just another phase of my thought. He went to Yale College and studied mines and mining, and became such an adept mining engineer that he was employed by the authorities of the university to train students who were behind in their classes. During his senior years, he earned \$15 a week for doing that work. When he graduated, they raised his pay from \$15 to \$45 a week and offered him a professorship. As soon as they did, he went right home to his mother. If they had raised that boy's pay from \$14 to \$15.60, he would have stayed and been proud of the raise, but when they put it up to \$45 at one leap, he

said, "Mother, I won't work for \$45 a week. The idea of a man with a brain like mine working for \$45 a week is ridiculous! Let's go out to California and stake out gold-mines and silver-mines and be immensely rich."

His mother said, "Now, Charlie, it is just as good to be happy as it is to be rich." "Yes," said Charlie, "But it is better to be rich and happy too." And they were both right. As he was an only son and she a widow, of course he had his way. They always do. They sold out in Massachusetts, and instead of going to California, they went to Wisconsin, where he went to work for the Superior Copper Mining Company at \$15 a week again, but with the proviso in his contract that he should have an interest in any mines he should discover for the company. I don't believe he ever discovered a mine, and if I am looking in the face of any stockholder of that copper company, you wish he had discovered something or other. I have friends who are not here because they could not afford a ticket, who did have stock in that company at the time this young man was employed there. This young man went out there and I have not heard a word from him. I don't know what became of him, and I don't know whether he found any mines or not, but I don't believe he ever did.

But I do know the other side of the story. He had scarcely gotten to the end of the old homestead before the succeeding owner went out to dig potatoes. The potatoes were already growing in the ground when he bought the farm, and as the old farmer was bringing in a basket of potatoes, it hugged very tight between the ends of the stone fence. You know that in Massachusetts our farms are nearly all stone walled. When that basket became stuck he set it down on the ground, and then pulled on one side, and pulled on the other side, and as he was dragging that basket through, this farmer noticed in the upper and outer corner of that stone wall, right next to the gate, a block of native silver eight inches square.

That professor of mines, mining, and mineralogy who knew so much about the subject that he would not work for \$45 a week, when he sold that homestead in Massachusetts sat right on that silver to make the bargain. He was born on that homestead, was brought up there, and had gone back and forth rubbing the stone with his sleeve until it reflected his countenance, and seemed to say, "Here is a hundred thousand dollars right down here just for the taking." But he would not take it. It was in a home in Newburyport, Massachusetts, and there was no silver there, all away off-well, I don't know where, and he did not, but somewhere else, and he was a professor of mineralogy.

My friends, that mistake is very universally made, and why should we even smile at him. I often wonder what has become of him. I do not know at all, but I will tell you what I "guess" as a Yankee. I guess that he sits out there by his fireside tonight with his friends gathered around him, and he is saying to them something like this: "Do you know that man Conwell who lives in



Philadelphia?" "Oh yes, I have heard of him." "Do you know of that man Jones that lives in Philadelphia?" "Yes, I have heard of him, too."

Then he begins to laugh, and shakes his sides, and says to his friends, "Well, they have done just the same thing I did, precisely"-and that spoils the whole joke, for you and I have done the same thing he did, and while we sit here and laugh at him he has a better right to sit out there and laugh at us. I know I have made the same mistakes, but, of course, that does not make any difference, because we don't expect the same man to preach and practice, too.

As I come here tonight and look around this audience, I am seeing again what through these fifty years I have continually seen – men that are making precisely that same mistake. I often wish I could see the younger people and would that the Academy had been filled tonight with our high school scholars and our grammar-school scholars, that I could have them to talk to. While I would have preferred such an audience as that, because they are most open, as they have not gotten into any custom that they cannot break, they have not met with any failures as we have; and while I could perhaps do such an audience as that more good than I can do grown up people, yet I will do the best I can with the material I have. I say to you that you have "acres of diamonds" in Philadelphia right where you now live. "Oh," but you will say, "you cannot know much about your city if you think there are any 'acres of diamonds' here."

I was greatly interested in that account in the newspaper of the young man who found that diamond in North Carolina. It was one of the purest diamonds that has ever been discovered, and it has several predecessors near the same locality. I went to a distinguished professor in mineralogy and asked him where he thought those diamonds came from. The professor secured the map of the geologic formations of our continent, and traced it. He said it went either through the underlying carboniferous strata adapted for such production, westward through Ohio and the Mississippi, or in more probability came eastward through Virginia and up the shore of the Atlantic Ocean. It is a fact that the diamonds were there, for they have been discovered and sold; and that they were carried down there during the drift period, from some northern locality. Now who can say but some person going down with his drill in Philadelphia will find some trace of a diamond-mine yet down here? Oh, friends! You cannot say that you are not over one of the greatest diamond-mines in the world, for such a diamond as that only comes from the most profitable mines that are found on earth.

But it serves to simply illustrate my thought, which I emphasize by saying if you do not have the actual diamond-mines literally you have all that they would be good for to you. Because now that the Queen of England has given the greatest compliment ever conferred upon American woman for her attire because she did not appear with any jewels at all at the late reception in England, it has almost

done away with the use of diamonds anyhow. All you would care for would be the few you would wear if you wish to be modest, and the rest of you would sell for money.

Now then, I say again that the opportunity to get rich, to attain unto great wealth, is here in Philadelphia now, within the reach of almost every man and woman who hears me speak tonight, and I mean just what I say. I have not come to this platform even under these circumstances to recite something to you. I have come to tell you what in God's sight I believe to be the truth, and if the years of life have been of any value to me in the attainment of common sense, I know I am right; that the men and women sitting here, who found it difficult perhaps to buy a ticket to this lecture or gathering tonight, have within their reach "acres of diamonds," opportunities to get largely wealthy. There never was a place on earth more adapted than the city of Philadelphia today, and never in the history of the world did a poor man without capital have such an opportunity to get rich quickly and honestly as he has now in our city. I say it is the truth, and I want you to accept it as such; for if you think I have come to simply recite something, then I would better not be here. I have no time to waste in any such talk, but to say the things I believe, and unless some of you get richer for what I am saying tonight my time is wasted.

I say that you ought to get rich, and it is our duty to get rich. How many of my pious brethren say to me, "Do you, a Christian minister, spend your time going up and down the country advising young people to get rich, to get money?" "Yes, of course I do." They say, "Isn't that awful! Why don't you preach the gospel instead of preaching about man's making money?" "Because to make money honestly is to preach the gospel." That is the reason. The men who get rich may be the most honest men you find in the community. "Oh," but says some young man here tonight, "I have been told all my life that if a person has money he is very dishonest and dishonourable and mean and contemptible."

My friend, that is the reason why you have none, because you have that idea of people. The foundation of your faith is altogether false. Let me say here clearly, and say it briefly, though subject to discussion which I have not time for here, ninety-eight out of one hundred of the rich men of America are honest. That is why they are rich. That is why they carry on great enterprises and find plenty of people to work with them. It is because they are honest men.

Says another young man, "I hear sometimes of men that get millions of dollars dishonestly." Yes, of course you do, and so do I. But they are so rare a thing in fact that the newspapers talk about them all the time as a matter of news until you get the idea that all the other rich men got rich dishonestly.

My friend, you take and drive me—if you furnish the auto, out into the suburbs of Philadelphia, and introduce me to the people who own their homes around this

great city, those beautiful homes with gardens and flowers, those magnificent homes so lovely in their art, and I will introduce you to the very best people in character as well as in enterprise in our city, and you know I will. A man is not really a true man until he owns his own home, and they that own their homes are made more honourable and honest and pure, true and economical and careful, by owning the home.

For a man to have money, even in large sum, is not an inconsistent thing. We preach against covetousness, and you know we do, in the pulpit, and oftentimes preach against it so long and use the terms about “filthy lucre: so extremely that Christians get the idea that when we stand in the pulpit we believe it is wicked for any man to have money, until the collection-basket goes around, and then we almost swear at the people because they don’t give more money. Oh, the inconsistency of such doctrines as that!

Money is power, and you ought to be reasonably ambitious to have it. You ought because you can do more good with it than you could without it. Money printed your Bible, money builds your churches, money sends your missionaries, and money pays your preachers, and you would not have many of them, either, if you did not pay them. I am always willing that my church should raise my salary, because the church that pays the largest salary always raises it the easiest. You never knew an exception to it in your life. The man who gets the largest salary can do the most good with the power that is furnished to him. Of course, he can if his spirit be right to use it for what it is given to him.

I say, then, you ought to have money. If you can honestly attain unto riches in Philadelphia, it is our Christian and godly duty to do so. It is an awful mistake of these pious people to think you must be awfully poor in order to be pious. Some men say, “Don’t you sympathize with the poor people?” of course I do, or else I would not have been lecturing these years. I won’t give in but what I sympathize with the poor, but the number of poor who are to be with is very small. To sympathize with a man whom God has punished for his sins, thus, to help him when God would still continue a just punishment, is to do wrong, no doubt about it, and we do that more than we help those who are deserving. While we should sympathize with God’s poor—that is, those who cannot help themselves, let us remember that there is not a poor person in the United States who was not made poor by his own shortcomings, or by the shortcomings of someone else. It is all wrong to be poor, anyhow. Let us give in to that argument and pass that to one side.

A gentleman gets up back there, and says, “Don’t you think there are some things in this world that are better than money?” Of course I do, but I am talking about money now. Of course there are some things higher than money. Oh yes, I know by the grave that has left me standing alone that there are some things in this world that are higher and sweeter and purer than money. Well do I know

there are some things higher and grander than gold. Love is the grandest thing on God's earth, but fortunate the lover who has plenty of money. Money is power, money is force, money will do good as it can harm. In the hands of good men and women it could accomplish, and it has accomplished, good.

I hate to leave that behind me. I heard a man get up in a prayer-meeting in our city and thank the Lord he was "one of God's poor." Well, I wonder what his wife thinks about that? She earns all the money that comes into that house, and he smokes a part of that on the veranda. I don't want to see any more of the Lord's poor of that kind, and I don't believe the Lord does. And yet there are some people who think in order to be pious you must be awfully poor and awfully dirty. That does not follow at all. While we sympathize with the poor, let us not teach a doctrine like that.

Yet the age is prejudiced against advising a Christian man (or, as a Jew would say, a godly man) from attaining unto wealth. The prejudice is so universal, and the years are far enough back, I think, for me to safely mention that years ago up at Temple University there was a young man in our theological school who thought he was the only pious student in that department. He came into my office one evening and sat down by my desk, and said to me: "Mr. President, I think it is my duty sir, to come in and labour with you." "What has happened now?" Said he, "I heard you say at the Academy, at the pierce School commencement, that you thought it was an honorable ambition for a young man to desire to have wealth, and that you thought it made him temperate, made him anxious to have a good name, and made him industrious. You spoke to make him a good man. Sir, I have come to tell you the Holy Bible says that 'money is the root of all evil.'" I told him I had never seen it in the Bible and advised him to go out into the chapel and get the Bible, and show me the place. So out he went for the Bible, and soon he stalked into my office with the Bible open, with all the bigoted pride of the narrow sectarian, of one who founds his Christianity on some misinterpretation of Scripture. He flung the Bible down on my desk, and fairly squealed into my ear: "There it is Mr. President; you can read it yourself." I said to him: "Well young man, you will learn when you get a little older that you cannot trust another denomination to read the Bible for you. You belong to another denomination. You are taught in the theological school, however, that emphasis is the exegesis. Now, will you take that Bible and read it yourself, and give the proper emphasis to it?"

He took the Bible, and proudly read, "'The love of money is the root of all evil.'" Then he had it right, and when one does quote aright from that same old Book he quotes the absolute truth. I have lived through fifty years of the mightiest battle that old Book has ever fought, and I have lived to see its banners flying free; for never in the history of this world did the great minds of earth so universally agree that the Bible is true-all true-as they do at this very hour.

So I say that when he quoted right, of course he quoted the absolute truth. "The love of money is the root of all evil." He who tries to attain unto it too quickly, or dishonestly, will fall into many snares, no doubt about that. The love of money. What is that? It is making an idol of money, and idolatry pure and simple everywhere is condemned by the Holy Scriptures and by man's common sense. The man that worships the dollar instead of thinking of the purposes for which it ought to be used, the man who idolizes simply money, the miser that hordes his money in the cellar, or hides it in his staking, or refuses to invest it where it will do the world good, that man who hugs the dollar until the eagle squeals has in him the root of all evil.

I think I will leave that behind me now and answer the question of nearly all of you who are asking, "Is there opportunity to get rich in Philadelphia?" Well, now, how simple a thing it is to see where it is, and the instant you see where it is, it is yours. Some old gentleman gets up back there and says, "Mr. Conwell, have you lived in Philadelphia for thirty-one years and don't know that the time has gone by when you can make anything in this city?" "No, I don't think it is." "Yes, it is; I have tried it."

"What business are you in?" "I kept a store here for twenty years, and never made a thousand dollars in the whole twenty years." "Well, then, you can measure the good you have been to this city by what this city has paid you, because a man can judge very well what he is worth by what he receives' that is, in what he is to the world at this time. If you have not made over a thousand dollars in twenty years in Philadelphia, it would have been better for Philadelphia if they had kicked you out of the city nineteen years and nine months ago. A man has no right to keep a store in Philadelphia twenty years and not make at least five hundred thousand dollars, even though it be a corner grocery up town." You say, "You cannot make five hundred thousand dollars in a store now." Oh, my friends, if you will just take only four blocks around you and find out what the people want and what you ought to supply them, you would very soon see it. There is wealth right within the sound of your voice.

Some one says: "You don't know anything about business. A preacher never knows a thing about business." Well, then I will have to prove that I am an expert. I don't like to do this, but I have to do it because my testimony will not be taken if I am not an expert. My father kept a country store, and if there is any place under the stars where a man gets all sorts of experience in every kind of mercantile transactions, it is in the country store. I am not proud of my experience, but sometimes when my father was away, he would leave me in charge of the store, though fortunately for him that was not very often. But this did occur many times, friends: A man would come into the store, and say to me, "Do you keep jack-knives?" "No, we don't keep jack-knives," and I went off whistling a tune. What did I care about that man, anyhow?

Then another farmer would come in and say, "Do you keep jack knives?" "No, we don't keep jack-knives." Then I went away and whistled another tune. Then a third man came right in the same door and said, "Do you keep jack knives?" "No. Why is everyone around here asking for jack-knives? Do you suppose we are keeping this store to supply the whole neighbourhood with jack knives?" Do you carry on your store like that in Philadelphia? The difficulty was I had not then learned that the foundation of godliness and the foundation principle of success in business are both the same precisely. The man who says, "I cannot carry my religion into business" advertises himself either as being an imbecile in business, or on the road to bankruptcy, or a thief, one of the three, sure. He will fail within a very few years. He certainly will if he doesn't carry his religion into business. If I had been carrying on my father's store on a Christian plan, godly plan, I would have had a jack knife for the third man when he called for it. Then I would have actually done him a kindness, and I would have received a reward myself, which it would have been my duty to take.

There are some over-pious Christian people who think if you take any profit on anything you sell that you are an unrighteous man. On the contrary, you would be a criminal to sell goods for less than they cost. You have no right to do that. You cannot trust a man with your money that cannot take care of his own. You cannot trust a man in your family that is not true to his wife. You cannot trust a man in the world that does not begin with his own heart, his own character, and his own life. It would have been my duty to have furnished a jack knife to the third, man or to the second, and to have sold it to him and profited myself. I have no more right to sell goods without making a profit on them than I have to overcharge him dishonestly beyond what they are worth. But I should so sell each bill of goods that the person to whom I sell shall make as much as I make.

To live and let live is the principle of the gospel, and the principle of every day common sense. Oh, young man, hear me; live as you go along. Do not wait until you have reached my years before you begin to enjoy anything of this life. If I had the millions back, of fifty cents of it, which I have tried to earn in these years, it would not do me anything like the good that it does me now in this almost sacred presence to-night. Oh, yes, I am paid over and over a hundredfold tonight for dividing as I have tried to do in some measure as I went along through the years. I ought not to speak that way, it sounds egotistical, but I am old enough now to be excused for that. I should have helped my fellow men, which I have tried to do, and everyone should try to do, and get the happiness of it. The man who goes home with the sense that he has stolen a dollar that day, that he has robbed a man of what was his honest due, is not going home to sweet rest. He arises tired in the morning and goes with an unclean conscience to his work the next day. He is not a successful man at all, although he may have laid up millions. But the man who has gone through life dividing always with his fellow-men, making and demanding his own rights and his own profits, and giving to every other man his rights and profits, lives every day, and not only

that, but it is the royal road to great wealth. The history of the thousands of millionaires shows that to be the case.

The man over there who said he could not make anything in a store in Philadelphia has been carrying on his store on the wrong principle. Suppose I go into your store tomorrow morning and ask, "Do you know a neighbour A, who lives one square away, at house No. 1240?" "Oh yes, I have met him. He deals here at the corner store." "Where did he come from?" "I don't know." "How many does he have in his family?" "I don't know." "What ticket does he vote?" "I don't know." "What church does he go to?" "I don't know, and don't care. What are you asking all these questions for?"

If you had a store in Philadelphia, would you answer me like that? If so, then you are conducting your business just as I carried on my father's business in Worthington, Massachusetts. You don't know where your neighbour came from when he moved to Philadelphia, and you don't care. If you had cared, you would be rich by now. If you had cared enough about him to take an interest in his affairs, to find out what he needed, you would have been rich. But you go through the world saying, "No opportunity to get rich," and there is the fault right at your door.

But another young man gets up over there and says, "I cannot take the mercantile business," (While I am talking of trade it applies to every occupation.) "Why can't you go into the mercantile business?" "Because I haven't any capital." Oh, the weak and dudish creature that can't see over its collar! It makes a person weak to see these little dudes standing around the corners and saying, "Oh, if I had plenty of capital, how rich would I get." "Young man, do you think you are going to get rich on capital?" "Certainly." Well, I say, "Certainly not." If your mother has plenty of money, and she will set you up in business, you will "set her up in business," supplying you with capital.

The moment a young man or woman gets more money than he or she has grown to by practical experience, that moment he has gotten a curse. It is no help to a young man or woman to inherit money. It is no help to your children to leave them money, but if you leave them education, if you leave them Christian and noble character, if you leave them a wide circle of friends, if you leave them an honourable name, it is far better than that they should have money. It would be worse for them, worse for the nation, that they should have any money at all. Oh, young man, if you have inherited money, don't regard it as a help. It will curse you through your years and deprive you of the very best things of human life. There is no class of people to be pitied as much as the inexperienced sons and daughters of the rich of our generation. I pity the rich man's son or those who depend on the rich for money. He can never know the best things in life.

One of the best things in our life is when a young man has earned his own living, and when he becomes engaged to some lovely young woman and makes up his mind to have a home of his own. Then with that same love comes also that divine inspiration toward better things, and he begins to save his money. He begins to leave off his bad habits and put money in the bank. When he has a few hundred dollars, he goes out in the suburbs to look for a home. He goes to the savings-bank, perhaps, for half of the value, and then goes for his wife, and when he takes his bride over the threshold of that door for the first time he says in words of eloquence my voice can never touch: "I have earned this home myself. It is all mine, and I divide with thee." That is the grandest moment a human heart may ever know.

But a rich man's son can never know that. He takes his bride into a finer mansion, it may be, but he is obliged to go all the way through it and say to his wife, "My mother gave me that, my mother gave me that, and my mother gave me this," until his wife wishes she had married his mother. I pity the rich man's son.

The statistics of Massachusetts showed that not one rich man's son out of seventeen ever dies rich. I pity the rich man's sons unless they have the good sense of the elder Vanderbilt, which sometimes happens. He went to his father and said, "Did you earn all your money?" "I did, my son. I began to work on a ferry-boat for twenty-five cents a day." "Then," said his son, "I will have none of your money," and he, too, tried to get employment on a ferryboat that Saturday night. He could not get one there, but he did get a place for three dollars a week. Of course, if a rich man's son will do that, he will get the discipline of a poor boy that is worth more than a university education to any man. He would then be able to take care of the millions of his father. But as a rule, the rich men will not let their sons do the very thing that made them great. As a rule, the rich man will not allow his son to work and his mother! Why, she would think it was a social disgrace if her poor, weak, little lily-fingered, sissy sort of a boy had to earn his living with honest toil. I have no pity for such rich men's sons.

I remember one at Niagara Falls. I think I remember one a great deal nearer. I think there are gentlemen present who were at a great banquet, and I beg pardon of his friends. At a banquet, here in Philadelphia there sat beside me a kind-hearted young man, and he said, "Mr. Conwell, you have been sick for two or three years. When you go out, take my limousine, and it will take you up to your house on Broad Street." I thanked him very much, and perhaps I ought not to mention the incident in this way, but I follow the facts. I got on to the seat with the driver of that limousine, outside, and when we were going up I asked the driver, "How much did this limousine cost?" "Six thousand eight hundred, and he had to pay the duty on it." "Well," I said, "does the owner of this machine ever drive it himself?" At that, the chauffeur laughed so heartily that he lost



control of his machine. He was so surprised at the question that he ran up on the sidewalk, and around a corner lamp post into the street again. And when he got into the street, he laughed till the whole machine trembled. He said: "He drive this machine! Oh, he would be lucky if he knew enough to get out when we get there."

I must tell you about a rich man's son at Niagara Falls. I came in from the lecture to the hotel, and as I approached the desk of the clerk, there stood a millionaire's son from New York. He was an indescribable specimen of anthropologic potency. He had a skullcap on one side of his head, with a gold tassel in the top of it, and a gold-headed cane under his arm with more in it than in his head. It is a very difficult thing to describe that young man. He wore an eye glass that he could not see through, patent leather boots that he could not walk in, and pants that he could not sit down in dressed like a grasshopper. This human cricket came up to the clerk's desk just as I entered, adjusted his unseeing eye glass, and spoke in this wise to the clerk. You see, he thought it was "Hinglish, you know," to lisp. "Thir, will you have the kindness to supply me with thome papah and enwelo-phs!" The hotel clerk measured the man quick, and he pulled the envelopes and paper out of a drawer, threw them across the counter toward the young man, and then turned away to his books. You should have seen that young man when those envelopes came across that counter.

He swelled up like a gobbler turkey, adjusted his unseeing eye-glass, and yelled: "Come right back here. Now, thir, will you order a thervant to take that papah and enwelo-phs to yondah dethk." Oh, the poor, miserable, contemptible American monkey! He could not carry paper and envelopes twenty feet. I suppose he could not get his arms down to do it. I have no pity for such travesties upon human nature. If you have not capital, young man, I am glad of it. What you need is common sense, not copper cents.

The best thing I can do is to illustrate by facts well known to you all. A.T. Stewart, a poor boy in New York, had \$1.50 to begin life on. He lost 87½ cents of that on the very first venture. How fortunate that young man who loses the first time he gambles. That boy said, "I will never gamble again in business," and he never did. How did he come to lose 87½ cents? You probably all know the story how he lost it-because he bought some needles, threads, and buttons to sell which people did not want, and had them left on his hands, a dead loss. Said the boy, "I will not lose any more money in that way." Then he went around first to the doors and asked the people what they did want. Then when he had found out what they wanted; he invested his 62½ cents to supply a known demand. Study it wherever you choose-in business, in your profession, in your housekeeping, whatever your life, that one thing is the secret of success. You must first know the demand. You must first know what people need, and then invest yourself where you are most needed. A.T. Stewart went on that principle until he was worth what amounted afterwards to forty million dollars, owning

the very store in which Mr. Wanamaker carries on his great work in New York. His fortune was made by his losing something, which taught him the great lesson that he must only invest himself or his money in something that people need. When will you salesmen learn it? When will you manufactures learn that you must know the changing needs of humanity if you would succeed in life? Apply yourselves, all you Christian people, as manufactures or merchants or workmen to supply that human need. It is a great principle as broad as humanity and as deep as the Scripture itself.

The best illustration I ever heard was of John Jacob Astor. You know that he made the money of the Astor family when he lived in New York. He came across the sea in debt for his fare. But that poor boy with nothing in his pocket made the fortune of the Astor family on one principle. Some young man here tonight will say, "Well, they could make these over in New York, but they could not do it in Philadelphia!" My friends, did you ever read that wonderful book of Riss (his memory is sweet to us because of his recent death), wherein is given his statistical account of the records taken in 1889 of 107 millionaires of New York. If you read the account, you will see that out of the 107 millionaires only seven made their money in New York. Out of the 107 millionaires worth ten million dollars in real estate then, 67 of them made their money in towns of less than 3,500 inhabitants. The richest man in this country to-day, if you read the real-estate values, has never moved away from a town of 3,500 inhabitants.

It makes not so much difference where you are as who you are. But if you cannot get rich in Philadelphia you certainly cannot do it in New York. Now John Jacob Astor illustrated what can be done anywhere. He had a mortgage once on a millinery-store, and they could not sell bonnets enough to pay the interest on his money. So he foreclosed that mortgage, took possession of the store, and went in to partnership with the very same people, in the very same store, with the same capital. He did not give them a dollar of capital. They had to sell goods to get any money. Then he left them alone in the store just as they had been before, and he went out and sat down on a bench in the park in the shade. What was John Jacob Astor doing out there, and in partnership with people who had failed on his own hands? Had the most important and, to my mind, the most pleasant part of that partnership on his hands. For as John Jacob Astor sat on that bench he was watching the ladies as they went by; and where is the man who would not get rich at that business? As he sat on the bench if a lady passed him with her shoulders back and head up, and looked straight to the front, as if she did not care if all the world did gaze on her, then he studied her bonnet, and by the time it was out of sight he knew the shape of the frame, the colour of the trimmings, and the crinklings in the feather. I sometimes try to describe a bonnet, but not always. I would not try to describe a modern bonnet.

Where is the man that could describe one? This aggregation of all sorts of driftwood stuck on the back of the head, or the side of the neck, like a rooster

with only one tail feather left. But in John Jacob Astor's day there was some art about the millinery business, and he went to the millinery-store and said to them: "Now put into the show-window just such a bonnet as I describe to you, because I have already seen a lady who likes such a bonnet. Don't make up any more bonnets until I come back." Then he went out and sat down again, and another lady passed him of a different form, of a different complexion, with a different shape and colour of bonnet. "Now," said he, "put such a bonnet as that in the show-window." He did not fill his show-window up-town with a lot of hats and bonnets to drive people away, and then sit on the back stairs and bawl because people went to Wanamaker's to trade. He did not have a hat or a bonnet in that show-window but what some lady liked before it was made up. The tide of custom began immediately to turn in, and that has been the foundation of the greatest store in New York in that line, and still exists as one of three stores. Its fortune was made by John Jacob Astor after they had failed in business, not by giving them any more money, but by finding out what the ladies liked for bonnets before they wasted any material in making them up. I tell you if a man could foresee the millinery business, he could foresee anything under heaven!

Suppose I was to go through this audience tonight and ask you in this great manufacturing city if there are not opportunities to get rich in manufacturing. "Oh yes," some young man says, "there are opportunities here still if you build with some trust and if you have two or three millions of dollars to begin with as capital." Young man, the history of the breaking up of the trusts by that attack upon "big business" is only illustrating what is now the opportunity of the smaller man. The time never came in the history of the world when you could get rich so quickly manufacturing without capital as you can now.

But you will say, "You cannot do anything of the kind. You cannot start without capital." Young man let me illustrate for a moment. I must do it. It is my duty to every young man, and woman, because we are all going into business very soon on the same plan. Young man remember if you know what people need you have gotten more knowledge of a fortune than any amount of capital can give you.

There was a poor man out of work living in Hingham, Massachusetts. He lounged around the house until one day his wife told him to get out and work, and, as he lived in Massachusetts, he obeyed his wife. He went out and sat down on the shore of the bay, and whittled a soaked shingle into a wooden chain. His children that evening quarrelled over it, and he whittled a second one to keep peace. While he was whittling the second one a neighbour came in and said: "Why don't you whittle toys and sell them? You could make money doing that." "Oh," he said, "I would not know what to make." "Why don't you ask your own children right here in your own house what to make?" "What is the use of trying that?" said the carpenter. "My children are different from other people's children." (I used to see people like that when I taught school.) But he acted

upon the hint, and the next morning when Mary came down the stairway, he asked, "What do you want for a toy?" She began to tell him she would like a doll's bed, a doll's washstand, and went on with a list of things that would take him a lifetime to supply. So, consulting his own children, in his own house, he took the firewood, for he had no money to buy lumber, and whittled those strong, unpainted Hingham toys that were for so many years known all over the world. That man began to make those toys for his own children, and then made copies and sold them through the boot-and-shoe store next door. He began to make a little money, and then a little more, and Mr. Lawson, in his Frenzied Finance says that man is the richest man in old Massachusetts, and I think it is the truth. And that man is worth a hundred millions of dollars today, and has been only thirty four years making it on that one principle that one must judge that what his own children like at home other people's children would like in their homes, too; to judge the human heart by oneself, by one's wife or by one's children. It is the royal road to success in manufacturing.

"Oh," But you say, "didn't he have any capital?" Yes, a penknife, but I don't know that he had paid for that. I spoke thus to an audience in New Britain, Connecticut, and a lady four seats back went home and tried to take off her collar, and the collar-button stuck in the buttonhole. She threw it out and said, "I am going to get up something better than that to put on collars." Her husband said: "After what Conwell said tonight, you see there is a need of an improved collar-fastener that is easier to handle. Where there is a human need; there is a great fortune. Now, then, make up a collar-button and get rich." He made fun of her, and consequently made fun of me, and that is one of the saddest things which comes over me like a deep cloud of midnight sometimes-although I have worked so hard for more than half a century, yet how little I have ever really done. Notwithstanding the greatness and the handsomeness of your compliment tonight, I do not believe there is one in ten of you that is going to make a million dollars because you are here tonight; but it is not my fault, it is yours. I say that sincerely. What is the use of my talking if people never do what I advise them to do? When her husband ridiculed her, she made up her mind she would make a better collar-button, and when a woman makes up her mind "she will," and does not say anything about it, she does it. It was that New England woman who invented the snap button which you can find anywhere now. It was a collar-button with a spring cap attached to the outer side. Any of you who wear modern waterproofs know the button that simply pushes together, and when you unbutton it, you simply pull it apart. That is the button to which I refer, and which she invented. She afterward invented several other buttons, then invested in more, and then was taken into partnership with great factories. Now that woman goes over the sea every summer in her private steamship-yes and takes her husband with her! If her husband were to die, she would have money enough to buy a foreign duke or count or some such title as that at the latest quotations.

Now what is my lesson in that incident? It is this: I told her then, though I did not know her, what I say to you, "Your wealth is too near to you. You are looking right over it"; and she had to look over it because it was right under her chin. I have read in the newspaper that a woman never invented anything. Well, that newspaper ought to begin again. Of course, I do not refer to gossip, I refer to machines and if I did, I might better include the men. That newspaper could never appear if women had not invented something. Friends, think. You women, think! You say you cannot make a fortune because you are in some laundry, or running a sewing machine it may be, or walking before some loom, and yet you can be a millionaire if you will but follow this almost infallible direction.

When you say a woman doesn't invent anything, I ask, who invented the Jacquard loom that wove every stitch you wear? Mrs. Jacquard. The printer's roller, the printing press, were invented by farmers' wives. Who invented the cotton-gin of the South that enriched our country so amazingly? Mrs. General Green invented the cotton gin and showed the idea to Mr. Whitney, and he like a man, seized it. Who was it that invented the sewing machine? If I would go to school tomorrow and ask your children they would say, "Elias Howe." He was in the Civil War with me, and often in my tent, and I often heard him say that he worked fourteen years to get up that sewing-machine. But his wife made up her mind one day they would starve to death if there wasn't something or other invented pretty soon, and so in two hours she invented the sewing-machine. Of course he took out the patent in his name. Men always do that. Who was it that invented the mower and the reaper? According to Mr. McCormick's confidential communication, so recently published, it was a West Virginia woman, who, after her father and grandfather had failed altogether in making a reaper and gave it up, took a lot of shears and nailed them together on the edge of a board, with one shaft of each pair loose, and then wired them so that when she pulled the wire the other way it opened them, and there she had the principle of the mowing machine. If you look at a mowing machine, you will see it is nothing but a lot of shears. If a woman can invent a mowing machine, if a woman can invent a Jacquard loom, if a woman can invent a cotton gin, if a woman can invent a trolley switch as she did and made the trolleys possible; if a woman can invent, as Mr. Carnegie said, the great iron squeezers that laid the foundation of all the steel millions of the United States, "we men" can invent anything under the stars! I say that for the encouragement of the men and not to speak badly of women.

Who are the great inventors of the world? Again, this lesson comes before us. The great inventor sits next to you, or you are the person yourself. "Oh," but you will say, "I have never invented anything in my life." Neither did the great inventors until they discovered one great secret. Do you think that it is a man with a head like a bushel measure or a man like a stroke of lightning? It is neither. The great man is a plain, straightforward, every-day, common-sense man. You would not dream that he was a great inventor if you did not see something he

had done. His neighbours do not regard him so great. You never see anything great over your back fence. You say there is no greatness among your neighbours. It is all away off somewhere else. Their greatness is ever so simple, so plain, so earnest, so practical, that the neighbours and friends never recognize it.

True greatness is often unrecognized. That is sure. You do not know anything about the greatest men and women. I went out to write the life of General Garfield, and a neighbour, knowing I was in a hurry, and as there was a great crowd around the front door, took me around to General Garfield's back door and shouted, "Jim! Jim!" And very soon "Jim" came to the door and let me in, and I wrote the biography of one of the grandest men of the nation, and yet he was just the same old "Jim" to his neighbour. If you know a great man in Philadelphia and you should meet him tomorrow, you would say, "How are you, Sam?" or "Good morning, Jim." Of course, you would. That is just what you would do.

One of my soldiers in the Civil War had been sentenced to death, and I went up to the White House in Washington-sent there for the first time in my life to see the President. I went into the waiting-room and sat down with a lot of others on the benches, and the secretary asked one after another to tell him what they wanted. After the secretary had been through the line, he went in, and then came back to the door and motioned for me. I went up to that anteroom, and the secretary said: "That is the President's door right over there. Just rap on it and go right in." I was never so taken aback, friends, in all my life, never. The secretary himself made it worse for me, because he had told me how to go in and then went out another door to the left and shut that. There I was, in the hallway by myself before the President of the United States of America's door. I had been on fields of battle, where the shells did sometimes shriek, and the bullets did sometimes hit me, but I always wanted to run. I have no sympathy with the old man who says, "I would just as soon march up into the cannon's mouth as eat my dinner." I have no faith in a man who doesn't know enough to be afraid when he is being shot at. I never was so afraid when the shells came around us at Antietam as I was when I went into that room that day; but I finally mustered the courage, I don't know how I ever did, and at arm's length tapped on the door. The man inside did not help me at all, but yelled out, "Come in and sit down!"

Well, I went in and sat down on the edge of a chair, and wished I were in Europe, and the man at the table did not look up. He was one of the world's greatest men and was made great by one single rule. Oh, that all the young people of Philadelphia were before me now and I could say just this one thing, and that they would remember it. I would give a lifetime for the effect it would have on our city and on civilization. Abraham Lincoln's principle for greatness can be adopted by nearly all. This was his rule: Whatsoever he had to do at all,

he put his whole mind in to it and held it and held it all there until that was all done. That makes men great almost anywhere. He stuck to those papers at that table and did not look up at me, and I sat there trembling. Finally, when he put the string around his papers, he pushed them over to one side and looked over at me, and a smile came over his worn face. He said; "I am a very busy man and have only a few minutes to spare. Now tell me in the fewest words what it is you want." I began to tell him, and mentioned the case, and he said; "I have heard all about it and you do not need to say any more. Mr. Stanton was talking to me only a few days ago about that. You can go to the hotel and rest assured that the President never did sign an order to shoot a boy under twenty years of age, and never will. You can say that to his mother anyhow."

Then he said to me, "How is it going in the field?" I said, "We sometimes get discouraged." And he said; "It is all right. We are going to win out now. We are getting very near the light. No man ought to wish to be President of the United States, and I will be glad when I get through; the Tad and I are going out to Springfield, Illinois. I have bought a farm out there and I don't care if I again earn only twenty-five cents a day. Tad has a mule team, and we are going to plant onions."

Then he asked me, "Were you brought up on a farm?" I said, "Yes; in the Berkshire Hills of Massachusetts." He then threw his leg over the corner of the big chair and said, "I have heard many a time, ever since I was young, that up there in those hills you have to sharpen the noses of the sheep in order to get down to the grass between the rocks." He was so familiar, so every day, so farmer like, that I felt right at home with him at once.

He then took hold of another roll of paper, and looked up at me and said, "Good morning." I took the hint then and got up and went out. After I had gotten out, I could not realize I had seen the President of the United States at all. But a few days later, when still in the city, I saw the crowd pass through the East Room by the coffin of Abraham Lincoln, and when I looked at the upturned face of the murdered President I felt then that the man I had seen such a short time before, who, so simple a man, so plain a man, was one of the greatest men that God ever raised up to lead a nation on to ultimate liberty. Yet he was only "Old Abe" to his neighbours. When they had the second funeral, I was invited among others, and went out to see that same coffin put back in the tomb at Springfield. Around the tomb stood Lincoln's old neighbours, to whom he was just "Old Abe."

Of course, that is all they would say. Did you ever see a man who struts around altogether too large to notice an ordinary working mechanic? Do you think he is great? He is nothing but a puffed-up balloon, held down by his big feet. There is no greatness there. Who are the great men and women? My attention was called the other day to the history of a very little thing that made the fortune of a very poor man. It was an awful thing, and yet because of that experience he, not a

great inventor or genius, invented the pin that now is called the safety-pin, and out of that safety-pin made the fortune of one of the great aristocratic families of this nation.

A poor man in Massachusetts who had worked in the nail works was injured at thirty-eight, and he could earn but little money. He was employed in the office to rub out the marks on the bills made by pencil memorandums, and he used an eraser until his hand grew tired. He then tied a piece of rubber on the end of a stick and worked it like a plane. His little girl came and said, "You do have a patent, don't you?" The father said afterwards, "My daughter told me when I took the stick and put the rubber on the end that there was a patent, and that was the first thought of that." He went to Boston and applied for his patent, and every one of you that has a rubber tipped pencil in your pocket is now paying tribute to the millionaire. All was income, all the way up into the millions.

But let me hasten to one other greater thought. "Show me the great men and women who live in Philadelphia." A gentleman over there will get up and say: "We don't have any great men in Philadelphia. They don't live here. They live away off in Rome or St. Petersburg or London or Manayunk, or anywhere else but here in our town." I have come now to the apex of my thought. I have come now to the heart of the whole matter and to the centre of my struggle: Why isn't Philadelphia a greater city in its greater wealth? Why does New York excel Philadelphia? People say, "Because of her harbour." Why do many other cities of the United States get ahead of Philadelphia now? There is only one answer, and that is because our own people talk down their own city. If there ever was a community on earth that must be forced ahead, it is the city of Philadelphia. If we are to have a boulevard, talk it down; if we are going to have better schools, talk them down; if you wish to have wise legislation, talk it down; talk all the proposed improvements down. That is the only great wrong that I can lay at the feet of the magnificent Philadelphia that has been so universally kind to me. I say it is time we turn around in our city and begin to talk up the things that are in our city and begin to set them before the world as the people of Chicago, New York, St. Louis, and San Francisco do. Oh, if we only could get that spirit out among our people, that we can do things in Philadelphia and do them well!

Arise, you millions of Philadelphians, trust in God and man, and believe in the great opportunities that are right here, not over in New York or Boston, but here for business, for everything that is worth living for on earth. There was never an opportunity greater. Let us talk up our own city.

But there are two other young men here tonight, and that is all I will venture to say, because it is too late. One over there gets up and says, "There is going to be a great man in Philadelphia, but never was one." "Oh, is that so? When are you going to be great?" "When I am elected to some political office." Young man, won't you learn a lesson in the primer of politics that is a prima facie evidence



of littleness to hold office under our form of government? Great men get into office sometimes, but what this country needs is men that will do what we tell them to do. This nation, where the people rule, is governed by the people, for the people, and so long as it is, then the officeholder is but the servant of the people, and the Bible says the servant cannot be greater than the master. The Bible says, "He that is sent cannot be greater than Him who sent Him." The people rule, or should rule; and if they do, we do not need the greater men in office. If the great men in America took our offices, we would change to an empire in the next ten years.

I know of a great many young women, now that woman's suffrage is coming, who say, "I am going to be President of the United States someday." I believe in woman's suffrage, and there is no doubt but what is coming, and I am getting out of the way, anyhow. I may want an office by and by myself; but if the ambition of an office influences the women in their desire to vote, I want to say right here what I say to the young men, that if you only get the privilege of casting one vote, you don't get anything that is worthwhile. Unless you can control more than one vote, you will be unknown, and your influence so dissipated as practically not to be felt. This country is not run by votes. Do you think it is? It is governed by influence. It is governed by the ambitions and the enterprises which control votes. The young woman that thinks she is going to vote for the sake of holding an office is making an awful blunder.

That other young man gets up and says, "There are going to be great men in this country and in Philadelphia." "Is that so? When?" When there comes a great war, when we get into difficulty through watchful waiting in Mexico; when we get into war with England over some frivolous deed, or with Japan or China or New Jersey or some distant country. Then I will march up to the cannon's mouth; I will sweep up among the glistening bayonets; I will leap into the arena and tear down the flag and bear it away in triumph. I will come home with stars on my shoulder and hold every office in the gift of the nation, and I will be great." No, you won't. You think you are going to be made great by an office but remember that if you are not great before you get the office, you won't be great when you secure it. It will only be a burlesque in that shape.

We had a Peace Jubilee here after the Spanish War. Out West they don't believe this, because they said, "Philadelphia would not have heard of any Spanish War until fifty years hence." Some of you saw the procession go up Broad Street, I was away, but the family wrote to me that the tally-ho coach with Lieutenant Hobson upon it stopped right at the front door and the people shouted, "Hurrah for Hobson!" and if I had been there I would have yelled too, because he deserves much more of his country than he has ever received. But suppose I go into school and say, "Who sunk the Merrimac at Santiago?" and if the boys answer me, "Hobson," they will tell me seven-eighths of a lie. There were seven other heroes on that steamer, and they, by virtue of their position, were

continually exposed to the Spanish fire, while Hobson, as an officer, might reasonably be behind the smokestack. You have gathered in this house your most intelligent people, and yet, perhaps, not one here can name the other seven men.

We ought not to so teach history. We ought to teach that, however humble a man's station may be, if he does his full duty in that place he is just as much entitled to the American people's honour as is the king upon his throne. But we do not so teach. We are now teaching everywhere that the generals do all the fighting.

I remember that, after the war, I went down to see General Robert E. Lee, that magnificent Christian gentleman of whom both North and South are now proud as one of our great Americans. The general told me about his servant, "Rastus," who was an enlisted coloured soldier. He called him in one day to make fun of him, and said, "Rastus, I hear that all the rest of your company are killed, and why are you not killed?" Rastus winked at him and said, "'Cause when there is any fightin' goin' on I stay back with the generals."

I remember another illustration. I would leave it out but for the fact that when you go to the library to read this lecture, you will find this has been printed in it for twenty-five years. I shut my eyes, shut them closed and lo! I see the faces of my youth. Yes, they sometimes say to me, "Your hair is not white; you are working night and day without seeming ever to stop; you can't be old." But when I shut my eyes, like any other man of my years, oh, then come trooping back the faces of the loved and lost of long ago, and I know, whatever men may say, it is evening-time.

I shut my eyes now and look back to my native town in Massachusetts, and I see the cattle show ground on the mountain-top; I can see the horse sheds there. I can see the Congregational church; see the town hall and mountaineers' cottages; see a great assembly of people turning out, dressed resplendently, and I can see flags flying and handkerchiefs waving and hear bands playing. I can see that company of soldiers that had re-enlisted marching up on that cattle show ground. I was but a boy, but I was captain of that company and puffed out with pride. A cambric needle would have burst me all to pieces. Then I thought it was the greatest event that ever came to man on earth. If you have ever thought you would like to be king or queen, you go and be received by the mayor.

The bands played, and all the people turned out to receive us. I marched up that Common so proud at the head of my troops, and we turned down into the town hall. Then they seated my soldiers down the centre aisle and I sat down on the front seat. A great assembly of people, a hundred or two, came in to fill the town hall, so that they stood up all around. Then the town officers came in and formed a half-circle. The mayor of the town sat in the middle of the platform. He was a

man who had never held office before; but he was a good man, and his friends have told me that I might use this without giving them offence. He was a good man, but he thought an office made a man great. He came up and took his seat, adjusted his powerful spectacles, and looked around, when he suddenly spied me sitting there on the front seat.

He came right forward on the platform and invited me up to sit with the town officers. No town officer ever took any notice of me before I went to war, except to advise the teacher to thrash me, and now I was invited up on the stand with the town officers. Oh my! the town mayor was then the emperor, the kind of our day and our time. As I came up on the platform, they gave me a chair about four feet, I would say, from the front.

When I had got seated, the chairman of the select men arose and came forward to the table, and we all supposed he would introduce the Congregational minister, who was the only orator in town, and that he would give the oration to the returning soldiers. But, friends, you should have seen the surprise which ran over the audience when they discovered that the old fellow was going to deliver that speech himself. He had never made a speech in his life, but he fell into the same error that hundreds of other men have fallen into. It seems so strange that a man won't learn he must speak his piece as a boy if he intends to be an orator when he is grown, but he seems to think all he has to do is to hold an office to be a great orator.

So, he came up to the front, and brought with him a speech which he had learned by heart walking up and down the pasture, where he had frightened the cattle. He brought the manuscript with him and spread it out on the table to be sure he might see it. He adjusted his spectacles and leaned over it for a moment and marched back on that platform, and then came forward like this, tramp, tramp, tramp. He must have studied the subject a great deal, then you come to think of it, because he assumed an "elocutionary" attitude. He rested heavily upon his left heel, threw back his shoulders, slightly advanced the right foot, opened the organs of speech, and advanced his right foot at an angle of forty-five. As he stood in that elocutionary attitude, friends, this is just the way that speech went. Some people say to me, "Don't you exaggerate?" That would be impossible. But I am here for the lesson and not for the story, and this is the way it went" "Fellow-citizens"- As soon as he heard his voice his fingers began to go like that, his knees began to shake, and then he trembled all over. He choked and swallowed and came around to the table to look at the manuscript. Then he gathered himself up with clenched fists and came back" "Fellow citizens, we are Fellow citizens, we are-we are-we are-we are-we are-we are very happy-we are very happy-we are very happy. We are very happy to welcome back to their native town these soldiers who have fought and bled- and come back again to their native town. We are especially-we are especially-we are especially. We are especially pleased to see with us to-day this young hero" (that meant me)-"this

young hero who in imagination” (friends remember he said that’ if he had not said “in imagination” I would have not been egotistic enough to refer to it at all)- “this young hero who in imagination we have seen leading-we have seen leading-leading. We have seen leading his troops on the deadly breach. We have seen his shining-we have seen his shining-his shining-his shining sword-flashing. Flashing in the sunlight, as he shouted to his troops, ‘Come on!’”

Oh dear, dear, dear! How little that good man knew about war. If he had known anything about war at all he ought to have known that any of my G. A. R. comrades here tonight will tell you is true, that it is next to a crime for an officer of infantry ever in time of danger to go ahead of his men. “I, with my shining sword flashing in the sunlight, shouting to my troops, ‘Come on!’” I never did it. Do you suppose I would get in front of my men to be shot in front by the enemy and in the back by my own men? That is no place for an officer. The place for the officer in actual battle is behind the line. How often, as a staff officer, I rode down the line, when our men were suddenly called to the line of a battle, and the Rebel yells were coming out of the woods and shouted: “Officers to the rear! Officers to the rear!” Then every officer gets behind the line of private soldiers, and the higher the officer’s rank the farther behind he goes. Not because he is any less brave, but because the laws of war require that.

And yet he shouted, “I, with my shining sword” In that house there sat the company of my soldiers who had carried that boy across the Carolina rivers that he might not wet his feet. Some of them had gone far out to wet his feet. Some of them had gone far out to get a pig or a chicken. Some of them had gone to death under the shell-swept pines in the mountains of Tennessee, yet in the good man’s speech they were scarcely known. He did refer to them, but only incidentally. The hero of the hour was this boy. Did the nation owe him anything? No, nothing then and nothing now. Why was he the hero? Simply because that man fell into that same human error that this boy was great because he was an officer, and these were only private soldiers.

Oh, I learned the lesson then that I will never forget so long as the tongue of the bell of time continues to swing for me. Greatness consists not in the holding of some future office, but really consists in doing great deeds with little means and the accomplishment of vast purposes from the private ranks of life. To be great at all one must be great here, now, in Philadelphia. He who can give to this city better streets and better sidewalks, better schools and more colleges, more happiness and more civilization, more of God, he will be great anywhere. Let every man or woman here, if you never hear me again, remember this, that if you wish to be great at all, you must begin where you are and what you are, in Philadelphia, now. He that can give you to his city any blessing, he who can be a good citizen while he lives here, he that can make better homes, he that can be a blessing whether he works in the shop or sits behind the counter or keeps house,

whatever be his life, he who would be great anywhere must first be great in his own Philadelphia.

### **Summation**

Opportunity for wealth exists in every corner of the world. Genius and imagination are gifts given by God to all men who will choose to avail themselves of it. Wherever needs or desires exist, so also exists an opportunity for great wealth to be gathered.

One must look at their own back yard, their own neighbourhood, town or city and look for needs or wants by the people who live there. As problems continue to abound, so also does opportunities abound to solve those problems. God has so designed every man and woman to serve others, by meeting their needs – by providing a service or product that will make their lives better. Thereby we all bless each other and are rewarded in accordance to the blessing we have become through our contributions.

So, whether you live in rural Africa, or in the teeming cities of India, Mexico or Brazil, you have all you need right where you are, right now to become wealthy. You don't need anything more than what God has already provided for you. Only ask Him to open your eyes to see it rather than looking elsewhere. You don't need hand outs because others around you already possess what you lack and together you can achieve greatness.

There is a saying in Canada that goes like this, “give a man a fish and you feed him for a day. Teach him how to fish and you feed him for a lifetime”. Through faith and industry, you can change your life and the lives of countless others for the better.

### **You Cannot Get Something for Nothing**

In large stores the management employs store security guards to prevent people from stealing. They catch several people every day trying to get something for nothing. All such people are living in the mental atmosphere of lack and limitation and are stealing from themselves peace, harmony, faith, honesty, integrity, good will, and confidence.

Furthermore, they are attracting to themselves all manner of loss, such as, loss of character, prestige, social status, peace of mind and perhaps if caught their freedom because of imprisonment. Not only that but they also will find themselves being robbed by others, because what you sow you will reap. These people lack faith in the source of supply and the understanding of how their minds work. If they would mentally call on the powers of their spirit and claim that they are guided to their true expression, they would find work and constant supply. Then by honesty, integrity, and perseverance, they would become a credit to themselves and to society at large.

Today there are many people trying to make money or get rich through online investment schemes. Most often these turn out to be Ponzi schemes, or pyramid schemes and in time collapse leaving many devastated and broke. Earning huge sums of money for doing almost nothing is greed and will eventually destroy those who get caught up in the hype of such opportunities. If you want lasting and true wealth, ask yourself what the opportunity does to help others (besides supposedly making money). Is there a product or service that really helps others or solves a problem many are struggling with? If not, then run far from it because it will fail. If you are lucky and get out of such schemes early, you may make money but just as with gambling, greed drives people to invest or buy more because it appears, they are winning. But then suddenly something goes wrong and the whole opportunity collapses, and many people lose a lot of money. How do I know this? Well I was once caught in the same trap and paid dearly for it.

## **CHAPTER 12**

### **The Importance of Forgiveness**

God plays no favourites. He is just and fair to all. God gave us life, and intended it to be enjoyed, fulfilling and wonderful in every way. God's desire is that through you He might show His divine character - love, peace, beauty, joy, and abundance. This is the will of God for all His creation. God is not the author of suffering or chaotic conditions in the world. Man's negative and destructive thinking brings about all these conditions because of the sinful nature of man - his natural tendency to the negative or evil. Therefore, it is wrong to blame God for your trouble or sickness. *"But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed". James 1:14*

Many people habitually lose out on what God intended for them by accusing and blaming God for the sin, sickness, and suffering of mankind. Others cast the blame on God for their pains, aches, and loss of loved ones, personal tragedies, and accidents. They are angry at God, and they believe He is responsible for their misery. So long as people entertain such negative concepts about God, they will experience the automatic negative reactions from their spirits bringing about sickness, poverty and failure.

Such people do not know that they are hurting themselves. They must see the truth, find release, and give up all condemnation, resentment, and anger against anyone or any power outside themselves. Otherwise, they cannot go forward into a healthy, happy, or creative life. The minute these people entertain a God of love in their minds and hearts, and when they believe that God is their Loving Father, who watches over them, cares for them, guides them, sustains and strengthens them, they will find themselves blessed in countless ways.

#### **Understanding the Laws of God**

If we are to enjoy and succeed in life, then we had better take the time to learn the "laws" or principles that govern life. That is why King David once said *"Blessed is the one who does not walk in step with the wicked or stand in the way that sinners take or sit in the company of mockers, but whose delight is in the law of the Lord, and who meditates on His law, day and night. That person is like a tree planted by streams of water, which yields its fruit in season and whose leaf does not wither—whatever they do prospers."* Psalms 1:1-3

If you misuse the laws of chemistry, you may blow up the lab or the factory. If you hit your hand with a hammer, you may break the bones in your hand. The hammer is not for that purpose. Its purpose is to drive nails into a board or to break something else.

In an earlier chapter, I related a story about a woman bound in a wheelchair due to bitterness and unforgiveness toward her mother and how it was that when she

forgave her mother and asked God's forgiveness for her wrong attitude and reaction, she was instantly healed and walked out of the church. It is critical we understand this because sometimes people pray and pray for healing without apparent results and come to false conclusions about God, lose hope and give up. If we are to help them or ourselves, we need to come to understand the deeper principles that affect our minds and spirits, thereby bringing about healing from much of the suffering we experience.

### **Three Murderers Find Forgiveness**

In the Bible we are introduced to three great men who had a significant impact on their world and still do to this day. They are Moses, King David and Saul of Tarsus.

Moses is well known as the most holy man who delivered Israel from the Egyptians and gave the law. He performed many miracles and lead a great rebellious people. Many Jews to this day revere Moses and teach about the laws he gave to Israel on their way to the promised land. But what so many forget is that, Moses was a murderer. Would you invite such a man to pastor your church or be your Prime Minister or President? Most likely not. Yet he was handpicked and empowered by God himself. In an attempt to show his support of his Jewish brothers against the harsh task masters in Egypt, Moses murders an Egyptian guard and then runs for his life into the desert where he remained for the next forty years before God called him to deliver Israel. Had Moses not found forgiveness, he would never have risen to this great holy man who among many things said "*Thou shalt not kill*". Is there hope for a murderer? Yes, there is and there is both forgiveness and renewal through Jesus Christ.

The second great man was King David. This man was said to be a man after God's own heart. He was a talented musician and a good, experienced shepherd. Yet God called him to be a king rather than a musician or shepherd. At only fifteen years of age he defeated Goliath and after many years of running for his life from his own father-in-law, he finally became the King of Israel. It was 13 years later after he was anointed to be the king. Unlike Moses, David was already in his calling and position when he murdered a man. Many people remember the story of David and Bathsheba. But few remember that he had her husband killed so that it looked like "an accident". He had his army general put him at the front of the battle and then suddenly pull away and leave him alone without help. Uriah was a very godly man and did nothing wrong. Yet David who had gotten Bathsheba pregnant could not hide it so had him killed. In any just society he would be charged with first degree murder. God did not let him off the hook either, and David was punished by God for his sin of murder. But David repented with many tears and God forgave him. David went on to marry Bathsheba and God gave them a son they named Solomon who went on to become the wisest and wealthiest King Israel ever had. Is there a future and a hope for a murderer? You bet there is.



The third murderer we learn about is in the New Testament. He was known as Saul of Tarsus and he was a mass murderer. Saul believed that the new Christian sect was of the Devil because it seemed to go against the traditions and teaching of Judaism. So, with great zeal and authority, he rooted out Christians everywhere and stoned them to death. In fact, he was there supporting the stoning to death of a great Evangelist of that day by the name of Stephen. But one day, Jesus appeared to him while he was on his way to Damascus to kill more Christians, and his life was forever changed. He changed his name to Paul perhaps to signify his change of character. Paul went on not only to be one of the Apostles but wrote most of the New Testament scriptures. Can God use a murderer? Yes. Paul also came to repentance and found forgiveness in Jesus Christ and in so doing, his life was forever changed.

Forgiveness can and does radically change people and there is nothing a man can do so bad, that he cannot be forgiven by God and find a new purpose in life. You may not be a murderer, but perhaps you have done something terrible that you have never found forgiveness for. Maybe you are as guilty as they were by having an abortion and killing your baby. If so, determine to change now. Turn to Christ and ask Him to forgive you, where possible, make things right with the person you sinned against and then forgive yourself and see what God will do through you.

*“Come now, let us reason together, says the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool”. Isaiah 1:18.*

### **Living Under Condemnation**

Due to upbringing, some people have been burdened with guilt unnecessarily. While the Bible is explicit on some things that are sin, there are many things taught by religious groups as sin that are not specifically mentioned in the Bible at all. In some religions, it is sinful to go to the theatre, play cards, drink a glass of wine, have your photo taken, wear makeup and a myriad of other so-called sins. But at the core of it, sin in these cases is based on your belief rather than reality. There is nothing good or bad (other than that which is clearly stated in the Bible as bad) but thinking makes it so. The Apostle Paul wrote, *“I am convinced, being fully persuaded in the Lord Jesus, that nothing is unclean in itself. But if anyone regards something as unclean, then for that person it is unclean”*. Romans 14:14

There is no evil in sex, the desire for food, dressing and looking beautiful, wealth, or enjoying a glass of wine. It depends on how you use these urges, desires, or aspirations. If you abuse their use, you will certainly reap the results of that abuse. Your desire for food can be met without killing someone for a loaf of bread or stealing it. If you overeat you will suffer ill health as a result. It is up

to us on how we control these urges but in and of themselves they are not sinful, unless we believe they are. So why would we knowingly and willingly put ourselves in a such a straitjacket? Much of the bondage people live in is self imposed due to ignorance of the truth.

Another stumbling block is on the observance of special days, be it the Sabbath day, birthdays or Christmas. People argue over such things endlessly but here is what the Bible has to say about it. *“One person regards one day above another; another regards every day alike. Each person must be fully convinced in his own mind. He who observes the day, observes it for the Lord, and he who eats, does so for the Lord, for he gives thanks to God; and he who eats not, for the Lord he does not eat, and gives thanks to God....” Romans 14:5-6*

So, we need to stop living under condemnation caused by the teaching of others, and we ought not to judge others either by their observance or non-observance of special days.

### **How Should You React?**

Often people react badly when faced with criticism. This is often because of their own ego and sense of self worth. When you experience anyone finding fault with you, or what you are doing the best way to respond is to ask yourself this question, "is there any truth in what they are saying" Don't trip over who said it and lash out at them again by finding fault with them. Use these criticisms to learn from and thereby grow.

### **How To Be Compassionate**

My dad once said that if you throw a stone into a pack of dogs, the one who yells the loudest is the one that got hit. Sometimes people spew out their venom on you because of a bad emotional state they are in. Don't let it affect you, don't take it to heart if there is no truth in what was said. Instead, you should pray for the other person's peace, harmony, and understanding. You cannot be hurt when you know that you are master of your thoughts, reactions, and emotions. Emotions follow thoughts, and you have the power to reject all thoughts, which may disturb or upset you.

### **All Things Work Together For Good**

*“A man's mind plans his way, but the Lord directs his steps and makes them sure”. Proverbs 16:9.*

*“For if you forgive other people when they sin against you, your heavenly Father will also forgive you. Matthew 6:14”.* None of us are perfect, and at one time or another have let someone down or been unfair or mean to someone else. God's divine law of sowing and reaping is at play here and so if we do not forgive others for what they did to us, we ourselves will not be forgiven by God. Its amazing how many people feel entitled to being forgiven and understood yet refuse to give the same to others. In their mind, the trespass against them was far

worse than any they have done to others. On the cross Jesus said, *"Father forgive them because they don't know what they are doing."* Luke 23:34 That is amazing considering how He was being treated by these murderous people. So, when you feel tempted to lash out at others who have hurt you remember Jesus and ask for His grace to enable you to do the same.

When you have committed your way to God's guidance and in faith believe He has answered your prayer, then you will find peace in the middle of a storm and joy instead of anger and disappointment when things don't turn out the way you planned. The writer of Proverbs says, *"Trust in the LORD with all your heart, and lean not on your own understanding; In all your ways acknowledge Him, And He will direct your paths"*. Proverbs 3:5-6.

### **Forgiveness is Necessary for Healing**

*"And when you stand praying, forgive, if you have anything against any . . ."* Mark 11:25.

Forgiveness of others is essential to mental peace and radiant health. You must forgive everyone who has ever hurt you if you want perfect health and happiness. Forgive yourself by getting your thoughts in harmony with divine law and order. You cannot really forgive yourself completely until you have forgiven others first. Nor can you find forgiveness yourself until you are willing to forgive others. To refuse to forgive others or yourself is nothing more than spiritual pride, ignorance or self pity.

In the psychosomatic field of medicine today, it is being constantly stressed that resentment, condemnation of others, remorse, and hostility are behind a host of maladies ranging from arthritis to cardiac disease. They point out that these sick people, who were hurt, mistreated, deceived, or injured, were full of resentment and hatred for those who hurt them. This caused inflamed and festering wounds in their spirits. There is only one remedy. They must cut out and discard their hurts, and the one and only sure way is by forgiveness. If you have been praying for healing with no results or believing for healing without results perhaps it may be because of a deep hurt which caused bitterness to take root in your spirit.

As previously mentioned, the highly successful cartoon called "Frozen" had a song that has become more popular than ever imagined. The catch phrase is "Let it go". In order to be healthy psychologically, emotionally and physically we need to heed that phrase - Let it go.

### **Forgiveness is Love in Action**

The essential ingredient in forgiveness is the willingness to forgive. If you sincerely are willing to forgive the other, despite your emotional pain, you are fifty-one percent there. To forgive others does not necessarily mean that you like them or want to associate with them. It also does not mean that your relationship with that person is restored. Some people are just toxic and being in a

relationship with them is not good for you. But you can forgive them and move on. You cannot be compelled to like someone, neither can a government legislate forgiveness, good will, love, peace, or tolerance. It is quite impossible to like people because someone in Parliament issues an edict to that effect. Strangely enough recent governments are trying to enforce such behaviour with regard to their sexual or gender orientation (as it is described).

We can, however, love people without liking them. The Bible says, "*A new command I give you: Love one another. As I have loved you, so you must love one another*" John 13:34. This, anyone can do who really wants to do it. Love means that you wish for the other health, happiness, peace, joy, and all the blessings of life. There is only one prerequisite, and that is sincerity. You are not being magnanimous when you forgive, you are really being wise, because what you wish for the other, you are wishing for yourself. This is the divine law of God and cannot be thwarted. If you are thinking it and you are feeling it, it will affect your spirit and bear the fruits of it in your own life. As you think and feel, so are you. Could anything be simpler than that?

### **How to Forgive**

The following is a simple method, which will work wonders in your life as you practice it: Quiet your mind, relax, and let go. Think of God and His love for you, and then affirm, "I fully and freely forgive (mention the name of the offender); I release them mentally and spiritually. I completely forgive everything connected with the matter in question. I am free, and he/she is free. It is a marvellous feeling. It is my day of general amnesty. I release anybody and everybody who has ever hurt me, and I wish for each and everyone health, happiness, peace, and all the blessings of life, though they do not deserve it. I will not be vengeful, resentful or give place to self pity. Whenever I think of the person or persons who hurt me, I say, 'I have released you, and all the blessings of life are yours.' I am free, and you are free. Amen!"

The great secret of true forgiveness is that once you have forgiven the person, it is unnecessary to repeat the prayer. Whenever the person comes to your mind, or the hurt happens to enter your mind, wish the delinquent person well, and say, "Peace be to you." In years gone by the Jews often greeted each other with "Shalom" meaning Peace be to you. Do this as often as the thought enters your mind. You will find that after a few days the thought of the person or experience will return less and less often, until it fades into nothingness.

### **The Acid Test for Forgiveness**

Just as there is an acid test for gold, there is also an acid test for forgiveness. If I should tell you something wonderful about someone who has wronged you, abused you, cheated you, or defrauded you, and you sizzled at hearing the good news about this person, the roots of hatred would still be in your spirit, playing havoc with you.

Let us suppose however, that you had shingles a year ago, and you told me about it. I would ask you if you had any pain now. You would automatically say, “Of course not, I have a memory of it but no pain.” That is exactly how past emotional hurts should feel. You have a memory of it but feel no pain anymore. You may have a memory of the incident but no sting or hurt any more. This is the acid test, and you must meet it psychologically and spiritually, otherwise, you are simply deceiving yourself and not practising true forgiveness.

Personally, I have found it relatively easy to forgive others by reminding myself of two important things; Firstly, that I have been forgiven of a lot myself so how dare I not forgive others of their wrongdoing. Secondly when I consider perhaps why the person wronged me, and try to see it from their perspective, Often I can understand why. It doesn't change the fact that they hurt me, but I can let it go.

When I sold vacuum cleaners door to door years ago, my sales manager told me that I would be rejected many times every day. That some people would be downright mean to me and slam the door in my face. But what he said made all the difference for me, so I never took it as personal rejection. He said, “Ken you never know what people are going through or what bad experiences they have had before and sometimes all the anger from the previous experience will be spewed out at you. You just showed up at the wrong time. But remember they do not know you, so how can they justifiably call you bad names or be rude to you? Obviously, it is not you that is the problem, but it is their hurt, their frustration and their anger that they obviously cannot control that you are getting the brunt of. It still is not a pleasant experience, but let it go and move on to the next house.”

Jesus said that we are to “*do unto others as we would have them do unto us*”. *Matthew 7:12*. Oh, if only we always heeded that in all our actions and reactions. Would you like to get yelled at? Then why do you yell at others – like your kids or spouse or co-worker? If you don't like getting ripped off, then why would you take advantage of others? Would you like others to forgive you of the hurt you deliberately or perhaps even unknowingly did to them? Then forgive those who did the same to you. Bitterness and unforgiveness will destroy your effectiveness and even your health. For your own sake learn to let it go. Stop taking everything so personal.

Today as I write this, we have a world that takes offence at just about everything. Its all about hurt feelings and that the individual's feelings are the most important thing in life. Why do people take offence so easily? I believe its because of a sense of being the centre of the universe and filled with pride (an inflated view of themselves compared to others) – how dare they say that about me? To prosper in life, you MUST let it go. There is nobody so righteous that has not themselves judged unfairly or offended someone else – knowingly,

deliberately or unknowingly. How dare you take offence when you yourself use your self righteousness to offend and condemn others? Make no mistake, God will hold you to account for your hypocrisy.

### **The Standard of Forgiveness – How do You Measure Up?**

So just how badly were you hurt or mistreated? How badly were you abused or taken advantage of? How badly were you insulted or made a fool of? I am not suggesting that your hurt or pain is irrelevant and did not cause you great emotional or physical suffering. But after Jesus had been severely beaten and nailed to a cross for doing nothing but good to others, he said *“Father forgive them, because they don’t know what they are doing”*. *Luke 23:34*. Say what? They knew very well what they were doing or did they? If they had any clue who Jesus really was, they would never had done to Him what they did. So, Jesus was right, they thought they knew what they were doing but they had no clue. They were so very wrong.

A saying I recall says, “hurt people, hurt people”. Often abusers have themselves been abused. David Meece, a famous Christian music artist tells his story of how he had been abused by a father who was an abusive drunk. His story is heartbreaking, and no child should have to go through what David did. But it was only after he had a vision of his father as a little boy and understood how his father had been severely abused as a boy, causing him to become an alcoholic, that he was able to finally forgive his father. His father was a victim and then himself became a victimizer. Dallas Holm sang a song I listened to in my teen years. One of the phrases in the song says, “He looked beyond my faults, and saw my need”. Would to God that in every relationship we would do that – to look beyond the faults of the person who is or has hurt us and see that they themselves are hurting and in need of help. Be proactive in forgiving as Jesus was and you will see miracles happening in your life and in the lives of others.

### **Get Understanding, And Gain Freedom**

When you understand the creative power of faith, you will cease blaming other people and conditions for making or ruining your life. You will understand that it is your own sinful behaviour, thoughts and feelings that created your experience. Furthermore, you will be aware that externals are not the causes and conditioners of your life and experiences. To think that others can mar your happiness that you are the football of a cruel fate that you must oppose and fight others for a living— all these and others like them are untenable when you understand that thoughts are things. As we have mentioned numerous times throughout this book, the Bible says the same thing. *“For as a man thinks in his heart, so is he”*. *Proverbs 23:7*.

## **CHAPTER 13**

### **Mental Blocks**

The solution lies within the problem. The answer is in every question. If you are presented with a difficult situation and you cannot see your way clear, the best procedure is to assume that God working through your spirit knows all and sees all, has the answer, and is revealing it to you now. Your new mental attitude that God is bringing about a happy solution will enable you to find the answer. Rest assured that such an attitude of mind would bring order, peace, and meaning to all your endeavours.

#### **Habits**

You are a creature of habit. Habit is the function of your spirit. You learned to walk, swim, ride a bicycle, and drive a car by consciously doing these things repeatedly until they established tracks in your mind, sometimes referred to as neural pathways. Then, the automatic habit action of your spirit took over. You can in fact choose either a good habit or a bad habit. If you repeat a negative thought or act over a period, you will be under the compulsion of that habit. The law of your spirit will enforce your deep-seated thoughts. On the other hand, if you repeat a good action in time it too will become a habit.

#### **How Much do You Want What You Want?**

A young man asked Socrates how he could get wisdom. Socrates replied, "Come with me." He took the young man to a river, pushed the boy's head under the water, held it there until the young man was gasping for air, before letting go. When this young man caught his breath, Socrates asked him, "What did you desire most when you were under the water?" "I wanted air," he said. Socrates said to him, "When you want wisdom as much as you wanted air when your head was immersed in the water, you will receive it." Likewise, when you really have an intense desire to overcome any block or bad habit in your life, and you come to a clear-cut decision that there is a way out, and that is the course you wish to follow, then victory and triumph are assured.

Joel Olsteen tells a story about his grandmother who was addicted to chewing tobacco. Despite how hard her husband tried to get her to quit she just could not. He even offered her the equivalent of twenty-five thousand dollars if she would quit but even that was not a strong enough motive to get her to quit. She felt hopeless. But her husband died and finding herself alone and wanting another partner, it dawned on her that the man she wanted would not even date her much less marry her if he knew of her disgusting habit. That mental image was so strong she was able to quit instantly. Finally, she found her strong reason to quit and in doing so, quitting became an easy thing to do. Like that lady, the reason you are not winning, are not free from bad habits or addictions is simply because you have not found a strong enough reason to succeed or in the case of habits, to

quit. If you want something bad enough, you will do whatever it takes to achieve it. No obstacle can stop you. Every successful person has faced massive obstacles, but determination caused them to do what needed to be done to overcome them. That is what faith does – it gives you the determination to do the impossible, but it will never happen unless and until you are resolute in your goal.

If you really want peace of mind and inner calm, you will get it. Regardless of how unjustly you have been treated, or how unfair the boss has been, or what a mean scoundrel someone has proven to be, all this makes no difference to you when you awaken to your mental and spiritual powers. You know what you want, and you will refuse to let the thieves (thoughts) of hatred, anger, hostility, and ill will rob you of peace, harmony, health, and happiness. You cease to become upset by people, conditions, news, and events by identifying your thoughts immediately with your aim in life. Your aim is peace, health, inspiration, harmony, and abundance. Your thought is the immaterial and invisible power, and you choose to let it bless, inspire, and give you peace.

### **Building in The Idea of Freedom**

You can build the idea of freedom and peace of mind into your mentality so that it reaches your spirit depths. The latter, being all powerful, will free you from all desire for alcohol or drugs. Then, you will have the new understanding of how your mind works, and you can truly back up your statement and prove the truth to yourself.

If you have a keen desire to free yourself from any destructive habit, you are fifty-one percent healed already. When you have a greater desire to give up the bad habit than to continue it, you will not experience too much difficulty in gaining complete freedom. Whatever thought you anchor your mind upon, will in due course become your reality. If you engage the mind on the concept of freedom (freedom from the habit) and peace of mind, and if you keep it focused on this new direction of attention, you generate feelings and emotions, which gradually emotionalize the concept of freedom and peace. Whatever idea you emotionalize is accepted by your spirit and brought to pass.

### **Replace Negative Thoughts & Feelings**

Firstly, don't live in regret or self condemnation for past failures. Realize that something good can come out of your failures and suffering. You have not suffered in vain. However, it is foolish to continue to suffer. If you continue as an alcoholic or drug addict, it will bring about mental and physical deterioration and decay. You must begin to see yourself free of the addiction and let go of whatever it was that got you started down that road in the first place. It is your time to be set free here and now – not someday. Your thoughts took you to the bottle or drugs; let it take you now to freedom and peace of mind. You may suffer a little bit, but it is for a constructive purpose. You will bear it like a



mother in the throws of childbirth, and you will, likewise, bring forth a child of the mind. Your spirit will give birth to sobriety.

The real cause of alcoholism or drug abuse is negative and destructive thinking; *for as a man thinks, so is he*. The alcoholic or drug addict has a deep sense of inferiority, inadequacy, defeat, and frustration, usually accompanied by a deep inner hostility. He has countless alibis as to his reason for drinking or using drugs, but the sole reason is in his thought life. He must go back to the beginning in his mind when it all began and recognize what got him started down that path. Then mentally let it go by looking at it differently. In like manner, ask God to help you let it go and heal you of the past hurts.

### **Three Steps to Success**

The first step: Get still; quiet the unruly thoughts running through your mind. Go wherever possible to a quiet place with minimal distractions. That is why the Bible talks about “going into your closet to pray”. In a relaxed, peaceful, receptive state, you are preparing for the second step. Tell those negative, fearful and doubtful thoughts to go away and mentally reject them as lies.

The second step: Take a brief phrase, which can readily be remembered, and repeat it over several times throughout your day while trying to visualize it and feel it. To prevent the mind from wandering, repeat it aloud or write it in a card which you can carry with you and read periodically throughout your day. Do this for five minutes or more at each instance. You will find in due course, a deep emotional response. If there are any mental blocks, such as unforgiveness or bitterness, let them go.

The third step: Begin to give thanks for your newfound freedom and the answer to your prayer. See God smiling down on you and “being in your corner” to help you. Feel the reassurance that you will succeed.

### **Never Quit**

When fear knocks at the door of your mind, or when worry, anxiety, and doubt cross your mind, behold your vision, your goal. Think of the infinite power within your spirit, which you can generate by your thinking and imagining, and this will give you confidence, power, and courage. Keep on, persevere, until the day breaks, and the shadows flee away.

## **CHAPTER 14**

### **How to Overcome Fear**

A popular bumper sticker today is "No fear". Is it possible to have no fear? As we have been learning throughout this book, it takes deliberate mind conditioning to develop faith and faith overcomes all fears. Because fear is such a strong emotion it becomes even more difficult to have faith in such circumstances but not impossible. It all begins with what you say. Do you admit fear or faith?

The story of David and Goliath is a classic one where we see the entire army of Israel and King Saul overcome by fear. They were paralyzed by it as fear often does. But David comes along, and he has faith. He sees a God bigger than Goliath and is angered that this man dares to raise himself above the God of Israel. Through faith, David went against Goliath and won an easy battle with predictable results. David did not have a "plan B". There was no doubt or fear in his heart when he came against this man. He clearly said that he would cut off his head and feed his body to the birds - and so he did. True faith has no plan B.

By quieting your spirit and seeing the result desired, you instruct your spirit and empower it to bring into reality that which you envision and declare to be true. Many people are afraid for example, of spiders. Yet some people have no fear whatsoever of them. I personally grew up in Africa with many large and varied spiders. But I recognized that no matter how big they were, they were decidedly smaller than me and no matter how fast they are, I can be faster so though I dislike them, I have no fear of spiders. I have no desire to hold one or have one for a pet, but I have no fear of them either. This is because of mental conditioning and nothing more. Most fears are irrational.

It is also interesting that studies have shown that animals often are able to sense fear and respond accordingly. Fear attracts an attack whereas boldness causes them to fear you. A horse knows when you are confident and in control, but he also knows when you are fearful and will most certainly respond with fear because it senses your fear. Though it is a huge powerful animal, the horse is naturally fearful, but through training, it will go into a battlefield with all kinds of dangers and noises and do well. If a horse can be trained to not be fearful, then surely, we can be right?

#### **Man's Greatest Enemy**

It is said that fear is man's greatest enemy and I think I would tend to agree. Fear is behind failure, sickness, and poor human relations. Millions of people are afraid of the past, failure, rejection, the future, old age, cancer, and death. Fear is a thought in your mind, and you are afraid because of your own thoughts. Therefore, the cure is to change your thoughts.

As a young boy I remember feeling paralyzed with fear when my brother told me there was a boogiemán under my bed that was going to get me. But when my father came into the room to say goodnight, he turned on the light. When he did, I felt safe from the Boogie man but asked him not to leave because I was afraid of the boogie man. My father then showed me there was nothing under my bed, that there was no boogie man – he also reprimanded my brother for scaring me. I was freed from my fear because I now knew the truth. Yet there never was a boogie man. He was simply in my imagination. The fear in my mind was as real as if there really was a boogie man there. The thing I feared did not exist. Likewise, most of your fears have no reality. They are merely a conglomeration of sinister shadows and shadows have no reality. However, fear is "negative faith" that can produce what is feared. This convinces people that their fears were well founded. Yet it is they themselves that created the outcome of what was feared. As Job said, *"For the very thing I dreaded has happened to me, and what I feared has come upon me"*. Job 3:25 I am of course not ignoring the fact that we need to be prudent in certain circumstances where fear can save your life or prevent you from doing something that will bring you harm. I am addressing imagined fear rather than real.

### **Do the Thing You Fear?**

Ralph Waldo Emerson, philosopher and poet, said, "Do the thing you are afraid to do, and the death of fear is certain." Mr. Emerson however suggests that we do it afraid. In my opinion that is dangerous because unless you have mentally first overcome the fear, you will act presumptuously and still reap that which you really do fear. When you affirm positively that you are going to master your fears, and you come to a definite decision in your conscious mind, you release the power resident in your spirit, which flows in response to the nature of your thought - the seed you planted and nurtured. Then and only then is it wise to do the thing that you once feared. Your mental confidence will overcome whatever it was you once feared, and you will find new freedom.

### **Fear of Rejection**

I have been involved in sales much of my life. Something I have come to see is the difference between a successful salesperson and one who was not, was their mental state when making sales calls - especially on the phone. Fear of rejection causes those who fail to get rejected while those who tell themselves that they love meeting new people and believe in their product or service usually succeed. They assume anyone who says no is either foolish or uneducated. But more than that, the successful salesperson fully expects good responses and does not easily accept no as a response.

The late Zig Ziglar told the story of how he asked his wife to marry him and she said no. Not just once but numerous times - I am not positive but I recall it may have been 7 or 8 times. The way Zig looked at it was simple. He was positive

she was the one for him and so he told himself that evidently based on what he had shown her so far, she was not convinced, so he went about to find out what it might take to convince her to say yes. Evidently, he succeeded and lived a long and happy life with his redhead.

### **Fear of Failure**

This fear is most common among students when it comes to exam time. The complaint is always the same: “I know the answers after the examination is over, but I can’t remember the answers during the examination.”

The idea, which realizes itself, is the one to which we invariably give concentrated attention. I find that each one is obsessed with the idea of failure. Fear is behind the temporary amnesia, and it is the cause of the whole experience.

Because we dislike feeling like a failure, we would rather not try than fail. The pain of failure over-rides our desire to accomplish something. Our ego would be bruised if we tried and failed. Others might laugh at us or ridicule us and that is untenable to us. But this is easily resolved when we have faith. You deliberately envision writing the exam prior to the event in your mind. You see yourself at peace, completing the answer to every question. Keep doing this until a deep settled peace rests in your spirit (gut) and when it comes time to write the exam you will be at peace and will easily remember everything you need to in order to pass with ease.

### **Fear of Water, Heights, Closed Places, Etc.**

There are many people who are afraid to go into an elevator, climb mountains, or even swim in the water. It may well be that the individual had unpleasant experiences in the water in his youth, such as having been thrown forcibly into the water without being able to swim. He might have been forcibly detained in an elevator, which failed to function properly, causing fear of closed places. Or he is afraid of falling and thus when high up on a mountain peering down, the fear of falling strikes, causing him to freeze or have a panic attack.

My wife had such a terrifying experience as a child. Being with her brothers and a sister in a small fishing boat in the middle of a lake, in the middle of a sudden storm, created a deep sense of fear associated with being in a boat in rough waters. She has no fear swimming or of water but being in a boat on less than calm water immediately triggers that past emotional memory, causing the fear to raise its ugly head afresh. To this day she detests being on a boat unless the water is completely calm. She knows it is unfounded and silly but cannot help herself because she has not yet actively programmed her mind to change her feelings about a boat bouncing around in the water.

### **Master Technique for Overcoming Any Fear**

The following is a process and technique for overcoming fear. It works like a charm. Try it! Suppose you are afraid of the water, heights, a job interview, or you fear closed places. If you are afraid of swimming for example, begin now to sit still for five or ten minutes three or four times a day, and imagine you are swimming. In fact, you are swimming in your mind. It is a subjective experience. Mentally you have projected yourself into the water.

You feel the cool of the water and the movement of your arms and legs. It is all real, vivid, and you envision it as a fun activity in your mind. It is not idle daydreaming, but deliberate. You know that what you are experiencing in your imagination will be developed in your spirit. In due course you will feel compelled to express the image and likeness of the picture you impressed on your spirit and your fear will be gone. As you can see, therefore I do NOT recommend doing what you are afraid of unless and until you have re-programmed your mind. Fear can kill and if you go in afraid, there is a high degree of risk it could turn bad unless and until you have re-programmed your mind.

You could apply the same method to anything you are afraid of – like flying or speaking in public. It matters little what the problem is, but what does matter is that you deliberately program your mind with you experiencing anything without fear and in fact enjoying it. It is all a matter of mind. I trained as a helicopter pilot and absolutely love flying. I have no fear of flying and look forward to looking at the scenery below and getting a new perspective – seeing things from above. I find it relaxing and very therapeutic. Why? Because my thoughts are not on the aircraft crashing or wildly bouncing in the thermals. It is a matter of focus.

### **Normal and Abnormal Fear**

Psychologists tell us that all men are born with only two fears, the fear of falling and the fear of noise. These are an alarm system given you by your creator as a means of self-preservation. Normal fear is good. You hear a truck coming down the road straight at you, and you get out of its path to survive. The momentary fear of being run over is overcome by your action. All other fears are the result of your own interpretation or through observing the fears of others such as parents, relatives, and teachers. Scary movies are also a major source.

In a similar way, allergies are usually the result of a malfunctioning immune system. A healthy immune system only recognizes actual physical threats whereas allergies are non-threats that the body believes is a threat and reacts accordingly. In like manner, our spirit may react to things it perceives as dangerous which in fact are not. Good mental conditioning will free you from imagined fears. Imagined fears are allergies of the mind.

### **Abnormal Fear**

Abnormal fear takes place when a man lets his imagination run wild. Like the story of Job in the Bible, he lost it all. There are people afraid that something terrible will happen to their children, and that some dread catastrophe will befall them. When they read about an epidemic or rare disease, they live in fear that they will catch it, and some imagine they have the disease already. All this is abnormal fear. They wake in the middle of the night with images and thoughts bombarding them or else have terrifying nightmares brought on by their fears. These can be overcome through mental re-programming as we have suggested throughout this book.

### **Are Your Fears Real?**

When I sold vacuum cleaners door to door I would often drive around for hours before I would even get out of my car to knock on a door. Understanding this, my sales manager came along one day and said to me “Don’t be afraid of the boogie man behind the door. There is no boogiemán. There are a lot of very nice people behind those doors and it’s fun to meet them.” He told me of the many wonderful people he had encountered through knocking on doors and encouraged me to focus on the people rather than trying to sell. By building a relationship, he said, you will have more enjoyment and will end up with more sales. It took some time for me to change the way I thought about it but as I did I found it to be absolutely true.

My dad told me an anecdote about a man who had a flat tire on a country road. When he went to get the spare and the jack, he realized there was no jack in the car. About a mile away he saw a farmhouse so started to walk toward it to ask if perhaps the farmer would have a jack and would lend it to him. On the way he began to reason with himself. The farmer is probably leery of strangers. He may think I am here to steal something or attack him. I knew a mean-spirited farmer when I was a boy and what if this farmer is just like him? As he got closer, he became more assured that this farmer likely would not help him – all in his imagination of course. When he finally got to the door a rough looking farmer came to the door and opened it but before he could say a thing, the man said to him, “Keep your stupid jack then” I will find someone else to help me.

Now I know this anecdote sounds a bit far fetched but, in many ways, it is the exact thing many of us do when we have already concluded the answer to be “no” before we even ask. My second eldest son was very much like this. There is no way he would ask me for anything – in case I said no. Strangely I seldom said no, but the few no’s he had received were evidently so devastating to him that he refused to go there. I tried to explain to him that if he does not ask, how will I know what he wants? I also said that if I know, I might say yes. But the prospect that I might say no was too much for him and because of his negative mindset he was convinced I would say no so there was no point in asking.

### **How to Be An Overcomer**

How do you overcome evil? By doing good. How do you overcome anything? By ignoring it and focusing instead on the good you seek or desire. The dominant thought then changes the circumstances. Reject all negative things and thoughts, pay no attention to them and focus on the good and good will most certainly come. Give no thought, time or words to the negative. It all starts with mentally rehearsing the happy outcome you desire. Seeing it completely opposite of how it may appear or may in fact be currently.

### **He Overcame a Threat on His Life**

I once heard a story of a man in North Africa who was running for President. He was a believer in Jesus Christ and as a result hated by many others who wanted control of the country. He said that all the abuse he received politically from newspapers and the opposition party never disturbed him because he trusted that God would take care of him and it mattered little what his enemies thought. He constantly recited a scripture that says, *“No weapon formed against you will prosper, and every tongue that rises in judgment against you, you will condemn”*. *Isaiah 54:17*. Meditating in this way, he generated tremendous power, which overcame all his difficulties and fears.

On one occasion a friend called him late one evening and told him a group of people were plotting against him. This is what he said to his friend, “Thanks but I am going to sleep now in perfect peace. You can discuss it with me in the morning.” He said, “I know that God will protect me, and I will not give place to fear and doubt otherwise it will manifest in my experience. I refuse to entertain their suggestion of fear. Therefore, no harm can come to me.” How would you have reacted if a friend called you and told you that?

He did not start worrying, tearing out his hair, or wringing his hands or running away as fast as he could. At his centre he found an inner peace, and there was a great calm. Furthermore, nothing happened to him. Miraculously those who plotted against him changed their plans.

### **Deliver yourself from all your fears**

Use this perfect formula for casting out fear. *“I sought the Lord, and He heard me, and delivered me from all my fears”*. *Psalms 34:4*. The Lord is the Great Spirit – God the creator. When you fully put your trust in Him there is no place for fear for there is nothing greater than He. Take time to consider His greatness and His attributes as a loving Father. There is nothing impossible to Him and He delights to give you the desires of your heart. Speak out praises, acknowledging His power and His attributes.

Rest in peace knowing that no harm will come to you because He cares for you and will protect you. Like the president elect mentioned earlier, keep stating this verse until peace grips your heart and mind. *“No weapon formed against you will prosper, and every tongue that rises up in judgment against you will*

*condemn.” Isaiah 54:17.* This will lift your spirit from the realm of the impossible to the possible and change your outcome. Master the techniques given to you throughout this book. Put them into practice now, today! Your spirit will respond, and you will be free of all fears.



## **Final Thoughts**

If you have read this book to this point – congratulations. I hope this book has challenged you, opened your eyes and given you the tools necessary for enjoying your life to the fullest. It is my prayer that you will grasp the truths revealed here and make them a part of your everyday life. That with every challenge, every mental attack of fear and every obstacle, health, finances, relations or other matters, you will stand up in faith and change the outcome for good. Above all I hope that you will or have made the most important step of faith and that is to accept Jesus Christ as your Saviour and Lord.

I would encourage you to read and re-read this book from time to time to remind yourself of these truths until they become a part of who you are and how you operate. Repetition and practice are the keys to success so keep trying, keep praying and keep your peace in all things.

I wish you all the very best from this day forward. As you create your own miracles through faith please share them with others and if possible, with me. I would love to hear from you.

Ken Crause

[ken@beyonddoubt.org](mailto:ken@beyonddoubt.org)

**References and credits**

I credit the Bible for enlightenment and wisdom. These will help to give us perspective on this thing called faith or belief and how it is the underlying principle behind every natural and supernatural experience of men around the world and throughout the ages.

I also want to give credit to my parents, my Bible College that set me on the right path of studying and interpreting scripture and above all the illumination of the Holy Spirit to help me understand the scriptures and bring praise to Jesus Christ.